AMS Advanced Application Deployment Options

AMS Advanced Application Developer's Guide

Version September 13, 2024

Copyright © 2026 Amazon Web Services, Inc. and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

AMS Advanced Application Developer's Guide: AMS Advanced Application Deployment Options

Copyright © 2026 Amazon Web Services, Inc. and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Amazon's trademarks and trade dress may not be used in connection with any product or service that is not Amazon's, in any manner that is likely to cause confusion among customers, or in any manner that disparages or discredits Amazon. All other trademarks not owned by Amazon are the property of their respective owners, who may or may not be affiliated with, connected to, or sponsored by Amazon.

Table of Contents

Application onboarding 1
What is application onboarding? 1
What we do, what we do not do 2
AMS Amazon Machine Images (AMIs) 3
Security enhanced AMIs 6
Key terms 6
What is my operating model? 12
Service management 14
Account governance 14
Service commencement 15
Customer relationship management (CRM) 15
CRM Process 16
CRM meetings 17
CRM Meeting Arrangements 18
CRM monthly reports 19
Cost optimization 20
Cost optimization framework 20
Cost optimization responsibility matrix 22
Service hours 24
Getting help 25
Application development 26
Being well-architected 27
Application layer vs infrastructure layer responsibilities 28
EC2 instance mutability 28
Using AWS Secrets Manager with AMS resources 29
Application deployment in AMS 30
Application deployment capabilities 30
Planning your application deployment 34
AMS Workload Ingest (WIGS) 34
Migrating Workloads: Prerequisites for Linux and Windows 35
How Migration Changes Your Resource 39
Migrating Workloads: Standard Process 40
Migrating workloads: CloudEndure landing zone (SALZ) 42
Tools account (migrating workloads) 45

Migrating workloads: Linux pre-ingestion validation 54
Migrating workloads: Windows pre-ingestion validation 56
Workload Ingest Stack: Creating 60
AMS CloudFormation ingest 65
CloudFormation Ingest Guidelines, Best Practices, and Limitations 66
CloudFormation Ingest: Examples 86
Create CloudFormation ingest stack 93
Update CloudFormation ingest stack 99
Approve a CloudFormation ingest stack changeset 104
Update CloudFormation stacks termination protection 106
Automated IAM deployments using CFN ingest or stack update CTs 110
CodeDeploy requests 115
CodeDeploy application 116
CodeDeploy deployment groups 123
AWS Database Migration Service (AWS DMS) 130
Planning for AWS DMS 131
Required data for AWS DMS setup 133
Tasks for AWS DMS setup 133
Managing your AWS DMS 166
Database (DB) import to AMS RDS for SQL Server 173
Setting up 174
Importing the database 175
Cleanup 176
Tier and Tie app deployments 176
Full stack app deployments 176
Working with provisioning change types (CTs) 177
See if an existing CT meets your requirements 177
Request a new CT 184
Test the new CT 185
Quick starts 186
AMS Resource Scheduler quick start 186
AMS Resource Scheduler terminology 186
AMS Resource Scheduler implementation 187
Setting up cross account backups (intra-Region) 190
Tutorials 193
Console Tutorial: High Availability Two Tier Stack (Linux/RHEL) 193

Before You Begin ... 194
Create the Infrastructure ... 195
Create, Upload, and Deploy the Application ... 198
Validate the Application Deployment ... 203
Tear Down the High Availability Deployment ... 204
Console Tutorial: Deploying a Tier and Tie WordPress Website ... 205
Creating an RFC using the Console (Basics) ... 206
Creating the Infrastructure ... 207
Create a WordPress CodeDeploy Bundle ... 210
Deploy the WordPress Application Bundle with CodeDeploy ... 214
Validate the Application Deployment ... 217
Tear Down the Application Deployment ... 217
CLI Tutorial: High Availability Two-Tier Stack (Linux/RHEL) ... 217
Before You Begin ... 218
Create the Infrastructure ... 219
Create, Upload, and Deploy the Application ... 224
Validate the Application Deployment ... 230
Tear Down the Application Deployment ... 230
CLI Tutorial: Deploying a Tier and Tie WordPress Website ... 233
Creating an RFC using the CLI ... 234
Create the Infrastructure ... 234
Create a WordPress Application Bundle for CodeDeploy ... 234
Deploy the WordPress Application Bundle with CodeDeploy ... 238
Validate the Application Deployment ... 244
Tear Down the Application Deployment ... 244
Application maintenance ... 248
Application maintenance strategies ... 248
Mutable deployment with a CodeDeploy-enabled AMI ... 249
Mutable deployment, manually configured and updated application instances ... 250
Mutable deployment with a pull-based deployment tool-configured AMI ... 252
Mutable deployment with a push-based deployment tool-configured AMI ... 253
Immutable deployment with a golden AMI ... 254
Update Strategies ... 256
Resource Scheduler ... 256
Deploying Resource Scheduler ... 257
Customizing Resource Scheduler ... 258

Using Resource Scheduler ... 258
AMS Resource Scheduler cost estimator ... 259
AMS Resource Scheduler best practices ... 260
Application security considerations ... 263
Access for configuration management ... 263
Application access firewall rules ... 263
Windows Instances ... 263
Parent Domain Controller, Windows ... 263
Child Domain Controller, Windows ... 264
Linux Instances ... 265
AMS egress traffic management ... 267
Security groups ... 268
Default Security Groups ... 269
Create, Change, or Delete Security Groups ... 272
Find Security Groups ... 272
Appendix: Application onboarding questionnaire ... 273
Deployment summary ... 273
Infrastructure deployment components ... 273
Application hosting platform ... 274
Application deployment model ... 275
Application dependencies ... 275
SSL certificates for product applications ... 276
Document history ... 277

Application onboarding

Welcome to AWS Managed Services (AMS) AMS operations plan. The purpose of this document is to describe the various methods you can use when onboarding your applications to AMS once initial networking and access management has been set up, and the issues you should consider when choosing those methods.

This document is intended for system integrators and application developers to assist in determining and crafting application processes for new AMS customers.

What is application onboarding?

AMS application onboarding refers to the deployment of resources and applications, as needed, into your AMS infrastructure. Architecting applications and infrastructure on the AMS platform is very similar to doing so on native AWS. Following AWS application and infrastructure design best practices while considering the capabilities that are provided by AMS will yield capable and operable applications hosted in the AMS environment.

Note

- US East (Virginia)
- US West (N. California)
- US West (Oregon)
- US East (Ohio)
- Canada (Central)
- South America (São Paulo)
- EU (Ireland)
- EU (Frankfurt)
- EU (London)
- EU West (Paris)
- Asia Pacific (Mumbai)
- Asia Pacific (Seoul)
- Asia Pacific (Singapore)

- Asia Pacific (Sydney)
- Asia Pacific (Tokyo)

New Regions are added frequently. To learn more, see AWS Regions and Availability Zones.

What we do, what we do not do

AMS gives you a standardized approach to deploying AWS infrastructure and provides the necessary ongoing operational management. For a full description of roles, responsibilities, and supported services, see Service Description.

Note

To request that AMS provide an additional AWS service, file a service request. For more information, see Making Service Requests.

- **What we do**:

  After you complete onboarding, the AMS environment is available to receive requests for change (RFCs), incidents, and service requests. Your interaction with the AMS service revolves around the lifecycle of an application stack. New stacks are ordered from a preconfigured list of templates, launched into specific virtual private cloud (VPC) subnets, modified during their operational life through requests for change (RFCs), and monitored for events and incidents 24/7.

  Active application stacks are monitored and maintained by AMS, including patching, and require no further action for the life of the stack unless a change is required or the stack is decommissioned. Incidents detected by AMS that affect the health and function of the stack generate a notification and may or may not need your action to resolve or verify. How-to questions and other inquiries can be made by submitting a service request.

  Additionally, AMS allows you to enable compatible AWS services that are not managed by AMS. For information about AWS-AMS compatible services, see Self-service provisioning mode.

- **What we DON'T do**:

While AMS simplifies application deployment by providing a number of manual and automated options, you're responsible for the development, testing, updating, and management of your application. AMS provides troubleshooting assistance for infrastructure issues that impact applications, but AMS can't access or validate your application configurations.

AMS Amazon Machine Images (AMIs)

AMS produces updated Amazon Machine Images (AMIs) every month for AMS supported operating systems. In addition, AMS also produces security enhanced images (AMIs) based on CIS Level 1 benchmark for a subset of AMS's supported operating systems. To find out which operating systems have a security enhanced image available, see the AMS Security User Guide, which is available through AWS Artifact -> Reports page (find the **Reports** option in the left navigation pane) filtered for AWS Managed Services. To access AWS Artifact, can contact your CSDM for instructions or go to Getting Started with AWS Artifact.

To receive alerts when new AMS AMIs are released, you can subscribe to an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) notification topic called "AMS AMI". For details, see AMS AMI notifications with SNS.

The AMS AMI naming convention is: `customer-ams-<operating system>-<release date> - <version>`. (for example, `customer-ams-rhel6-2018.11-3`)

Only use AMS AMIs that start with `customer`.

AMS recommends always using the most recent AMI. You can find the most recent AMIs by either:

- Looking in the AMS console, on the **AMIs** page.
- Viewing the latest AMS AMI CSV file, available from your CSDM or through this ZIP file: AMS 11.2024 AMI contents and CSV file in a ZIP.

  For past AMI ZIP files, see the Doc History.
- Running this AMS SKMS command (AMS SKMS SDK required):

```
aws amsskms list-amis --vpc-id VPC_ID --query "Amis.sort_by(@,&Name)[?
 starts_with(Name,'customer')].[Name,AmiId,CreationTime]" --output table
```

AMS AMI content added to base AWS AMIs, by operating system (OS)

- Linux AMIs:
  - AWS CLI Tools
  - NTP
  - Trend Micro Endpoint Protection Service Agent
  - Code Deploy
  - PBIS / Beyond Trust AD Bridge
  - SSM Agent
  - Yum Upgrade for critical patches
  - AMS custom scripts / management software (controlling boot, AD join, monitoring, security, and logging)
- Windows Server AMIs:
  - Microsoft .NET Framework 4.5
  - PowerShell 5.1
  - AWS Tools for Windows PowerShell
  - AMS PowerShell Modules controlling boot, AD join, monitoring, security, and logging
  - Trend Micro Endpoint Protection Service Agent
  - SSM Agent
  - CloudWatch Agent
  - EC2Config service (through Windows Server 2012 R2)
  - EC2Launch (Windows Server 2016 and Windows Server 2019)
  - EC2LaunchV2 (Windows Server 2022 and later)

Linux-based AMIs:

- Amazon Linux 2023 (Latest Minor Release) (Minimal AMI not supported)
- Amazon Linux 2 (Latest Minor Release)
- Amazon Linux 2 (ARM64)
- Red Hat Enterprise 7 (Latest Minor Release)
- Red Hat Enterprise 8 (Latest Minor Release)
- Red Hat Enterprise 9 (Latest Minor Release)
- SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 15 SP6

- Ubuntu Linux 18.04
- Ubuntu Linux 20.04
- Ubuntu Linux 22.04
- Ubuntu Linux 24.04
- Amazon Linux: For product overview, pricing information, usage information, and support information, see Amazon Linux AMI (HVM / 64-bit) and Amazon Linux 2.

  For more information, see Amazon Linux 2 FAQs.
- RedHat Enterprise Linux (RHEL): For product overview, pricing information, usage information, and support information, see Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) 7 (HVM).
- Ubuntu Linux 18.04: For product overview, pricing information, usage information, and support information, see Ubuntu 18.04 LTS - Bionic.
- SUSE Linux Enterprise Server for SAP applications 15 SP6:
  - Run the following steps once per account:
    1. Navigate to the **AWS Marketplace**.
    2. Search for the SUSE 15 SAP product.
    3. Choose **Continue to subscribe**.
    4. Choose **Accept terms**.
  - Complete the following steps **every time** you need to launch a new **SUSE Linux Enterprise Server for SAP Applications 15 SP6** instance:
    1. Note the AMI ID for the subscribed **SUSE Linux Enterprise Server for SAP Applications 15** AMI.
    2. Create a Deployment | Advanced stack components | EC2 stack | Create change type ct-14027q0sjyt1h RFC. Replace *`InstanceAmiId`* with the AWS Marketplace AMI ID that you subscribed to.

Windows-based AMIs:

Microsoft Windows Server (2016, 2019 and 2022), based on latest Windows AMIs.

For examples of creating AMIs, see Create AMI.

Offboarding AMS AMIs:

AMS does not unshare any AMIs from you during offboarding to avoid impact for any of your depedencies. If you want to remove AMS AMIs from your account, you can use the `cancel-image-launch-permission` API to hide specific AMIs. For example, you can use the script below to hide all of the AMS AMIs that were shared with your account earlier:

```
for ami in $(aws ec2 describe-images --executable-users self --owners 027415890775 --
query 'Images[].ImageId' --output text) ;
    do
    aws ec2 cancel-image-launch-permission --image-id $ami ;
    done
```

You must have the AWS CLI v2 installed for the script to execute without any errors. For AWS CLI installation steps, see Installing or updating the latest version of the AWS CLI. For details on the `cancel-image-launch-permission` command, see `cancel-image-launch-permission`.

Security enhanced AMIs

AMS provides security enhanced images (AMIs) based on CIS Level 1 benchmark for a subset of AMS's supported operating systems. To find which operating systems have a security enhanced image available, see the *AWS Managed Services (AMS) Customer Security Guide*. To access this guide, open AWS Artifact, select **Reports** in the left navigation pane, and then filter for AWS Managed Services. For instructions on how to access AWS Artifact, contact your CSDM or see Getting Started with AWS Artifact for more information.

AMS key terms

- *AMS Advanced*: The services described in the "Service Description" section of the AMS Advanced Documentation. See Service Description.
- *AMS Advanced Accounts*: AWS accounts that at all times meet all requirements in the AMS Advanced Onboarding Requirements. For information on AMS Advanced benefits, case studies, and to contact a sales person, see AWS Managed Services.
- *AMS Accelerate Accounts*: AWS accounts that at all times meet all requirements in the AMS Accelerate Onboarding Requirements. See Getting Started with AMS Accelerate.
- *AWS Managed Services*: AMS and or AMS Accelerate.
- *AWS Managed Services accounts*: The AMS accounts and or AMS Accelerate accounts.
- *Critical Recommendation*: A recommendation issued by AWS through a service request informing you that your action is required to protect against potential risks or disruptions to your resources

or the AWS services. If you decide not to follow a Critical Recommendation by the specified date, you are solely responsible for any harm resulting from your decision.

- *Customer-Requested Configuration*: Any software, services or other configurations that are not identified in:
  - Accelerate: Supported Configurations or AMS Accelerate; Service Description.
  - AMS Advanced: Supported Configurations or AMS Advanced; Service Description.
- *Incident communication*: AMS communicates an Incident to you or you request an Incident with AMS via an Incident created in Support Center for AMS Accelerate and in the AMS Console for AMS. The AMS Accelerate Console provides a summary of Incidents and Service Requests on the Dashboard and links to Support Center for details.
- *Managed Environment*: The AMS Advanced accounts and or the AMS Accelerate accounts operated by AMS.

  For AMS Advanced, these include multi-account landing zone (MALZ) and single-account landing zone (SALZ) accounts.
- *Billing start date*: The next business day after AWS receives the your information requested in the AWS Managed Services Onboarding Email. The AWS Managed Services Onboarding Email refers to the email sent by AWS to the you to collect the information needed to activate AWS Managed Services on the your accounts.

  For accounts subsequently enrolled by you, the billing start date is the next day after AWS Managed Services sends an AWS Managed Services Activation Notification for the enrolled account. An AWS Managed Services Activation Notification occurs when:

  1. You grants access to a compatible AWS account and hand it over to AWS Managed Services.
  2. AWS Managed Services designs and builds the AWS Managed Services Account.
- *Service Termination*: You can terminate the AWS Managed Services for all AWS Managed Services accounts, or for a specified AWS Managed Services account for any reason by providing AWS at least 30 days notice through a service request. On the Service Termination Date, either:
  1. AWS hands over the controls of all AWS Managed Services accounts or the specified AWS Managed Services accounts as applicable, to you, or
  2. The parties remove the AWS Identity and Access Management roles that give AWS access from all AWS Managed Services accounts or the specified AWS Managed Services accounts, as applicable.
- *Service termination date*: The service termination date is the last day of the calendar month following the end of the 30 days requisite termination notice period. If the end of the requisite

termination notice period falls after the 20th day of the calendar month, then the service termination date is the last day of the following calendar month. The following are example scenarios for termination dates.

  - If the termination notice is provided on April 12, then the 30 days notice ends on May 12. The service termination date is May 31.
  - If a termination notice is provided on April 29, then the 30 days notice ends on May 29. The service termination date is June 30.
- *Provision of AWS Managed Services*: AWS makes available to you and you can access and use AWS Managed Services for each AWS Managed Services account from the service commencement date.
- *Termination for specified AWS Managed Services accounts*: You can terminate the AWS Managed Services for a specified AWS Managed Services account for any reason by providing AWS notice through a service request ("AMS Account Termination Request").

Incident management terms:

- *Event*: A change in your AMS environment.
- *Alert*: Whenever an event from a supported AWS service exceeds a threshold and triggers an alarm, an alert is created and notice is sent to your contacts list. Additionally, an incident is created in your Incident list.
- *Incident*: An unplanned interruption or performance degradation of your AMS environment or AWS Managed Services that results in an impact as reported by AWS Managed Services or you.
- *Problem*: A shared underlying root cause of one or more incidents.
- *Incident Resolution* or *Resolve an Incident*:
  - AMS has restored all unavailable AMS services or resources pertaining to that incident to an available state, or
  - AMS has determined that unavailable stacks or resources cannot be restored to an available state, or
  - AMS has initiated an infrastructure restore authorized by you.
- *Incident Response Time*: The difference in time between when you create an incident, and when AMS provides an initial response by way of the console, email, service center, or telephone.
- *Incident Resolution Time*: The difference in time between when either AMS or you creates an incident, and when the incident is resolved.
- *Incident Priority*: How incidents are prioritized by AMS, or by you, as either Low, Medium, or High.

  - *Low*: A non-critical problem with your AMS service.
  - *Medium*: An AWS service within your managed environment is available but is not performing as intended (per the applicable service description).
  - *High*: Either (1) the AMS Console, or one or more AMS APIs within your managed environment are unavailable; or (2) one or more AMS stacks or resources within your managed environment are unavailable and the unavailability prevents your application from performing its function.

  AMS may re-categorize incidents in accordance with the above guidelines.
- *Infrastructure Restore*: Re-deploying existing stacks, based on templates of impacted stacks, and initiating a data restore based on the last known restore point, unless otherwise specified by you, when incident resolution is not possible.

Infrastructure terms:

- *Managed production environment*: A customer account where the customer's production applications reside.
- *Managed non-production environment*: A customer account that only contains non-production applications, such as applications for development and testing.
- *AMS stack*: A group of one or more AWS resources that are managed by AMS as a single unit.
- *Immutable infrastructure*: An infrastructure maintenance model typical for Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling groups (ASGs) where updated infrastructure components, (in AWS, the AMI) are replaced for every deployment, rather than being updated in-place. The advantages to immutable infrastructure is that all components stay in a synchronous state since they are always generated from the same base. Immutability is independent of any tool or workflow for building the AMI.
- *Mutable infrastructure*: An infrastructure maintenance model typical for stacks that are not Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling groups and contain a single instance or just a few instances. This model most closely represents traditional, hardware-based, system deployment where a system is deployed at the beginning of its life cycle and then updates are layered onto that system over time. Any updates to the system are applied to the instances individually, and may incur system downtime (depending on the stack configuration) due to application or system restarts.
- *Security groups*: Virtual firewalls for your instance to control inbound and outbound traffic. Security groups act at the instance level, not the subnet level. Therefore, each instance in a subnet in your VPC could have a different set of security groups assigned to it.
- *Service Level Agreements (SLAs)*: Part of AMS contracts with you that define the level of expected service.

- SLA *Unavailable* and *Unavailability*:
  - An API request submitted by you that results in an error.
  - A Console request submitted by you that results in a 5xx HTTP response (the server is incapable of performing the request).
  - Any of the AWS service offerings that constitute stacks or resources in your AMS-managed infrastructure are in a state of "Service Disruption" as shown in the Service Health Dashboard.
  - Unavailability resulting directly or indirectly from an AMS exclusion is not considered in determining eligibility for service credits. Services are considered available unless they meet the criteria for being unavailable.
- *Service Level Objectives (SLOs)*: Part of AMS contracts with you that define specific service goals for AMS services.

Patching terms:

- *Mandatory patches*: Critical security updates to address issues that could compromise the security state of your environment or account. A "Critical Security update" is a security update rated as "Critical" by the vendor of an AMS-supported operating system.
- *Patches announced versus released*: Patches are generally announced and released on a schedule. Emergent patches are announced when the need for the patch has been discovered and, usually soon after, the patch is released.
- *Patch add-on*: Tag-based patching for AMS instances that leverages AWS Systems Manager (SSM) functionality so you can tag instances and have those instances patched using a baseline and a window that you configure.
- *Patch methods*:
  - *In-place patching*: Patching that is done by changing existing instances.
  - *AMI replacement patching*: Patching that is done by changing the AMI reference parameter of an existing EC2 Auto Scaling group launch configuration.
- *Patch provider* (OS vendors, third party): Patches are provided by the vendor or governing body of the application.
- *Patch Types*:
  - *Critical Security Update (CSU)*: A security update rated as "Critical" by the vendor of a supported operating system.
  - *Important Update (IU)*: A security update rated as "Important" or a non-security update rated as "Critical" by the vendor of a supported operating system.

- *Other Update (OU)*: An update by the vendor of a supported operating system that is not a CSU or an IU.

- *Supported patches*: AMS supports operating system level patches. Upgrades are released by the vendor to fix security vulnerabilities or other bugs or to improve performance. For a list of currently supported OSs, see Support Configurations.

Security terms:

- *Detective Controls*: A library of AMS-created or enabled monitors that provide ongoing oversight of customer managed environments and workloads for configurations that do not align with security, operational, or customer controls, and take action by notifying owners, proactively modifying, or terminating resources.

Service Request terms:

- *Service request*: A request by you for an action that you want AMS to take on your behalf.
- *Alert notification*: A notice posted by AMS to your **Service requests** list page when an AMS alert is triggered. The contact configured for your account is also notified by the configured method (for example, email). If you have contact tags on your instances/resources, and have provided consent to your cloud service delivery manager (CSDM) for tag-based notifications, the contact information (key value) in the tag is also notified for automated AMS alerts.
- *Service notification*: A notice from AMS that is posted to your **Service request** list page.

Miscellaneous terms:

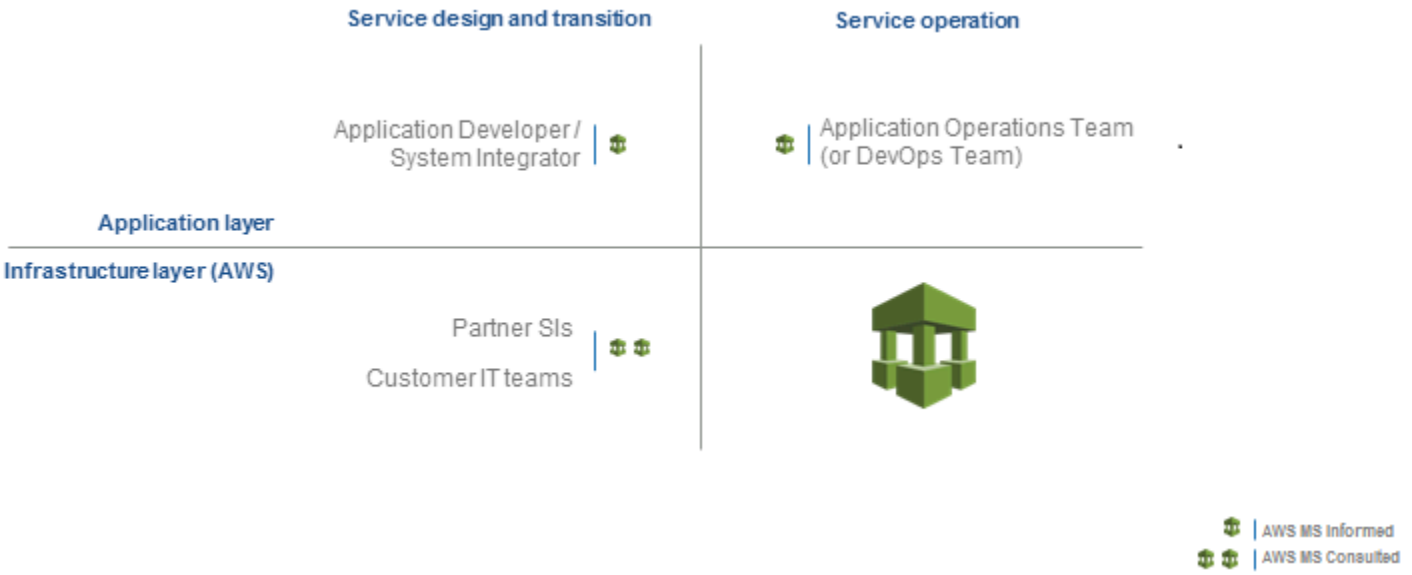
- *AWS Managed Services Interface*: For AMS: The AWS Managed Services Advanced Console, AMS CM API, and Support API. For AMS Accelerate: The Support Console and Support API.
- *Customer satisfaction (CSAT)*: AMS CSAT is informed with deep analytics including Case Correspondence Ratings on every case or correspondence when given, quarterly surveys, and so forth.
- *DevOps*: DevOps is a development methodology that strongly advocates automation and monitoring at all steps. DevOps aims at shorter development cycles, increased deployment frequency, and more dependable releases by bringing together the traditionally-separate functions of development and operations over a foundation of automation. When developers

can manage operations, and operations informs development, issues and problems are more quickly discovered and solved, and business objectives are more readily achieved.

- *ITIL*: Information Technology Infrastructure Library (called ITIL) is an ITSM framework designed to standardize the lifecycle of IT services. ITIL is arranged in five stages that cover the IT service lifecycle: service strategy, service design, service transition, service operation, and service improvement.
- *IT service management (ITSM)*: A set of practices that align IT services with the needs of your business.
- *Managed Monitoring Services (MMS)*: AMS operates its own monitoring system, Managed Monitoring Service (MMS), that consumes AWS Health events and aggregates Amazon CloudWatch data, and data from other AWS services, notifying AMS operators (online 24x7) of any alarms created through an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic.
- *Namespace*: When you create IAM policies or work with Amazon Resource Names (ARNs), you identify an AWS service by using a namespace. You use namespaces when identifying actions and resources.

What is my operating model?

As an AMS customer, your organization has decided to separate application and infrastructure operations and use AMS for infrastructure operations. AMS will work with your application design and development team along with your infrastructure design team to ensure that your infrastructure operations run smoothly. The following graphic illustrates this concept:



AMS takes responsibility for your AWS infrastructure operations while your teams are responsible for your application operations. As the application and infrastructure design teams, you must understand who will be operating the application once it has been deployed to production in the AMS infrastructure. This guide covers common approaches to infrastructure design as it relates to application deployment and maintenance.

Service management in AWS Managed Services

Topics

- Account governance in AWS Managed Services
- Service commencement in AWS Managed Services
- Customer relationship management (CRM)
- Cost optimization in AWS Managed Services
- Service hours in AWS Managed Services
- Getting help in AWS Managed Services

How the AMS service works for you.

Account governance in AWS Managed Services

This section covers AMS account governance.

You are designated a cloud service delivery manager (CSDM) who provides advisory assistance across AMS, and has a detailed understanding of your use case and technology architecture for the managed environment. CSDMs work with account managers, technical account managers, AWS Managed Services cloud architects (CAs), and AWS solution architects (SAs), as applicable, to help launch new projects and give best-practices recommendations throughout the software development and operations processes. The CSDM is the primary point of contact for AMS. Key responsibilities of your CSDM are:

- Organize and lead monthly service review meetings with customers.
- Provide details on security, software updates for environment and opportunities for optimization.
- Champion your requirements including feature requests for AMS.
- Respond to and resolve billing and service reporting requests.
- Provide insights for financial and capacity optimization recommendations.

Service commencement in AWS Managed Services

Service Commencement: The *Service Commencement Date* for an AWS Managed Services account is the first day of the first calendar month after which AWS notifies you that the activities set out in the Onboarding Requirements for that AWS Managed Services account have been completed; provided that if AWS makes such notification after the 20th day of a calendar month, the Service Commencement Date is the first day of the second calendar month following the date of such notification.

Service Commencement

- **R** stands for responsible party that does the work to achieve the task.
- **I** stands for informed; a party which is informed on progress, often only on completion of the task or deliverable.

Service commencement

Step #	Step title	Description	Custome	AMS
1.	Customer AWS account handover	Customer creates a new AWS account and hands it over to AWS Managed Services	R	I
2.	AWS Managed Services Account - design	Finalize design of AWS Managed Services Account	I	R
3.	AWS Managed Services Account - build	An AWS Managed Services account is built per the design in Step 2	I	R

Customer relationship management (CRM)

AWS Managed Services (AMS) provides a customer relationship management (CRM) process to ensure that a well-defined relationship is established and maintained with you. The foundation of this relationship is based on AMS's insight into your business requirements. The CRM process facilitates accurate and comprehensive understanding of:

- Your business needs and how to fill those needs
- Your capabilities and constraints
- AMS and your different responsibilities and obligations

The CRM process allows AMS to use consistent methods to deliver services to you and provide governance for your relationship with AMS. The CRM process includes:

- Identifying your key stakeholders
- Establishing a governance team
- Conducting and documenting service review meetings with you
- Providing a formal service complaint procedure with an escalation procedure
- Implementing and monitoring your satisfaction and feedback process
- Managing your contract

CRM Process

The CRM process includes these activities:

- Identifying and understanding your business processes and needs. Your agreement with AMS identifies your stakeholders.
- Defining the services to be provided to meet your needs and requirements.
- Meeting with you in the service review meetings to discuss any changes in the AMS service scope, SLA, contract, and your business needs. Interim meetings may be held with you to discuss performance, achievements, issues, and action plans.
- Monitoring your satisfaction by using our customer satisfaction survey and feedback given at meetings.
- Reporting performance on monthly internally-measured performance reports.
- Reviewing the service with you to determine opportunities for improvements. This includes frequent communication with you regarding the level and quality of the AMS service provided.

CRM meetings

AMS cloud service delivery managers (CSDMs) conduct meetings with you regularly to discuss service tracks (operations, security, and product innovations) and executive tracks (SLA reports, satisfaction measures, and changes in your business needs).

Meeting	Purpose	Mode	Participants
Weekly status review (optional)	Outstanding issues or incidents, patching, security events, problem records 12-week operational trend (+/- 6) Application operator concerns Weekend schedule	On-site customer location/ Telecom/Chime	AMS: CSDM and cloud architect (CA) Customer assigned team members (ex: Cloud/ Infrastructure, Application Support, Architecture teams, etc.)
Monthly business review	Review service level performance (reports, analysis, and trends) Financial analysis Product roadmap CSAT	On-site customer location/ Telecom/Chime	AMS: CSDM, cloud architect (CA), AMS account team, AMS technical product manager (TPM) (optional), AMS OPS manager (optional) You: Application Operator representative

Meeting	Purpose	Mode	Participants
Quarterly business review	Scorecard and service level agreement (SLA) performance and trends (6 months) Upcoming 3/6/9/12 months plans/ migrations Risk and risk mitigations Key improvement initiatives Product roadmap items Future direction aligned opportuni ties Financials Cost savings initiatives Business optimization	On-site customer location	AMS: CSDM, cloud architect , AMS account team, AMS service director, AMS operation manager You: Applicati on operator representative, service represent ative, service director

CRM Meeting Arrangements

The AMS CSDM is responsible for documenting the meeting, including:

- Creating the agenda, including action items, issues, and list of attendees.
- Creating the list of action items reviewed at each meeting to ensure items are completed and resolved on schedule.
- Distributing meeting minutes and the action item list to meeting attendees by email within one business day after the meeting.
- Storing meeting minutes in the appropriate document repository.

In absence of the CSDM, the AMS representative leading the meeting creates and distributes minutes.

Note

Your CSDM works with you to establish your account governance.

CRM monthly reports

Your AMS CSDM prepares and sends out monthly service performance presentations. The presentations include information on the following:

- Report date
- Summary and Insights:
  - Key Call Outs: total and active stack count, stack patching status, account onboarding status (during onboarding only), customer-specific issues summaries
  - Performance: Stats on incident resolution, alerts, patching, requests for change (RFCs), service requests, and console and API availability
  - Issues, challenges, concerns, and risks: Customer-specific issues status
  - Upcoming items: Customer-specific onboarding or incident resolution plans
- Managed Resources: Graphs and pie charts of stacks
- AMS Metrics: Monitoring and event metrics, incident metrics, AMS SLA adherence metrics, service request metrics, change management metrics, storage metrics, continuity metrics, Trusted Advisor metrics, and cost summaries (presented several ways). Feature requests. Contact information.

Note

In addition to the described information, your CSDM also informs you of any material change in scope or terms, including use of subcontractors by AMS for operational activities. AMS generates reports about patching and backup that your CSDM includes in your monthly report. As part of the report generating system, AMS adds some infrastructure to your account that is not accessible to you:

- An S3 Bucket, with the raw data reported
- An Athena instance, with query definitions to query the data
- A Glue Crawler to read the raw data from the S3 bucket

Cost optimization in AWS Managed Services

AWS Managed Services provides a detailed cost utilization and savings reports every month to you during your monthly business reviews (MBRs).

AMS follows a standard set of processes and mechanisms to identify cost saving avenues in your managed accounts and assist you to plan and roll-out the changes to optimize your AWS spend.

> **Note**
>
> AMS is developing a video to help with cost optimization. The first step is providing you with a PDF and an Excel spreadsheet of cost optimization best practices. To access these resources, open the Quick guide to cost optimization ZIP file.

Cost optimization framework

AMS follows a three-staged approach with you to optimize your AWS costs:

1. Identify cost optimization avenues in your managed environment
2. Present a cost optimization plan to you
3. Assist in achieving cost optimization in a measurable way

Identify cost optimization avenues in the managed environment

AMS utilizes AWS native tools like Cost explorer, and Trusted Advisor while leveraging over 20 cost savings patterns across architecture optimization, EC2 instance, and AWS account-focused optimizations to build tailored cost savings recommendations for you.

Some of the optimization recommendations include the following.

Architectural optimization recommendations:

- **Optimal S3 storage class use**: Amazon S3 offers a range of storage classes to meet various workload requirements based on data access, resiliency, and cost. S3 Intelligent-Tiering and S3 storage class analysis based on the workload needs allow you to manage the S3 costs efficiently.
- **Using caching architectures**: Leveraging cache instances, where applicable, can help you replace some database instances, while simultaneously meeting your IOPS requirements.

- **EBS upgrade savings**: Migrating your EBS volumes from gp2 to gp3 provides a cost savings of up to 20% and you can take advantage of predictable 3,000 IOPS baseline performance and 125 MiB/s, regardless of volume size.
- **Using elasticity**: The auto-scaling capabilities that AWS provides allow effective resource utilization and avenues for cost optimization. Reviewing and updating the instance scaling policies regularly based on need, further provides cost savings.

EC2 instance-focused recommendations

- **Instance rightsizing**: Recommendations focused on sizing the instances and optimal configurations based on the usage. Recommendations also include utilizing Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling feature and replacing EC2 instances where applicable with AWS Lambda or static web content on Amazon S3, etc.
- **Instance scheduling**: Using AMS Resource Scheduler to automatically start and stop instances based on a time schedule helps contain costs, especially for non-production instances that are not utilized during non-business hours.
- **Subscribing to Savings plans**: Savings plan is the easiest way to save on AWS usage. The EC2 Instance Savings Plans offer up to 72% savings compared to On-Demand pricing on your Amazon EC2 instances usage. The Amazon SageMaker AI Savings Plans offer up to 64% savings on your Amazon SageMaker AI services usage. AMS provides appropriate recommendations on Savings plans based on your AWS resource usage.
- **Reserved instance (RI) usage and consumption guidance**: Amazon EC2 Reserved Instances (RI) provide a significant discount (up to 75%) compared to On-Demand pricing and provide a capacity reservation when used in a specific availability zone.
- **Spot instance usage**: Fault tolerant workloads can utilize Spot instances and reduce prices up to 90%.
- **Idle instance termination**: Identifying and reporting instances that are idle or have low utilization that can be terminated.

Account-focused recommendations

- **Account cleanup**: At an account level, AMS also identifies un-utilized EBS volumes, duplicate CloudTrail trails, empty accounts with unused resources, and so forth, and provides recommendations for clean-up.

- **SLA recommendations**: Further, AMS regularly reviews your Plus and Premium accounts and recommends choosing the right SLA level for the accounts.
- **AMS automation optimization**: AMS continuously optmizes AMS automation and infrastructure used to provide AMS services.

Present to customers and assist in planning

AMS conducts monthly business reviews (MBRs) with the key customer stakeholders and present the cost saving avenues, mechanisms and recommendations identified along with potential cost savings. We further work with you to plan the changes needed.

Assist in recommendation implementation and measure the cost impact

AMS assists in achieving and measuring cost impacts and optimization changes.

You assess the application impact, risk and success criteria of the recommended changes, and raise the appropriate requests for change (RFCs) through the AMS console. AMS collaborates with you and implements the changes related to cost optimization in your managed accounts. AMS measures the cost impact and include the savings realised in the monthly business reviews (MBRs).

Cost optimization responsibility matrix

Responsibilities in AMS cost optimization.

Cost optimization RACI

Activity	Customer	AMS
Compiling cost saving recommendations and preparing the report	I	R
Presenting cost	C	R

Activity	Customer	AMS
savings report		
Planning changes associated with cost savings	R	C
Assessing the change impact and risk	R	C
Raising RFCs for implementing the changes	R	C
Reviewing the RFCs and implementing the changes	C	R

Activity	Customer	AMS
Testing the application and validating the change implementation	R	C
Measuring the cost impact post change and presenting to customer	I	R

Service hours in AWS Managed Services

Feature	AMS Advanced
	Premium Tier
Service request	24/7
Incident management (P2-P3)	24/7
Backup and recovery	24/7
Patch management	24/7
Monitoring and alerting	24/7

Feature	AMS Advanced
	Premium Tier
Automated request for change (RFC)	24/7
Non-automated request for change (RFC)	24/7
Cloud service delivery manager (CSDM)	Monday to Friday: 08:00–17:00, local business hours

Getting help in AWS Managed Services

AMS supports you with Incident Management, Service Request Management, and Change Management 24 hours a day, 7 days a week, 365 days a year (in accordance with the AMS Service Level Agreement applied to the account).

To report an AWS or AMS service performance issue that impacts your managed environment, use the AMS console and submit an incident report. For details, see Reporting an incident. For general information about AMS incident management, see Incident response.

To ask for information or advice, or to request additional services from AMS, use the AMS console and submit a service request. For details, Creating a Service Request. For general information about AMS service requests, see Service Request Management.

Application development

Application development processes and practices that enable effective design and deployment of applications into an AWS Managed Services (AMS) environment. AMS guides you through the following high level process:

1. Envision and architect an application to be developed or integrated to your AMS-managed environment. Some considerations:
    a. How will you deploy your application? With automation using a deployment tool such Ansible, or manually by directly uploading needed files?
    b. How will you update your application? With a mutable approach updating each instance separately, or with an immutable approach updating each instance with a single, updated, AMI in an Auto Scaling group?
2. Plan and architect the infrastructure that will be used to host the application using AWS architecture libraries, AWS "Well-Architected" guidance, and AMS and other cloud architecture subject matter experts. The following sections of this guide provide information that can help with this.
3. Select an infrastructure deployment approach:
    a. Full Stack: All infrastructure components are deployed at once, together.
    b. Tier and Tie: Infrastructure deployments are deployed separately and, after, tied together with security group modifications. This type of deployment is also achieved by a serial configuration of stack components that builds upon each other; for example, specifying the load balancer that you previously created when you create an Auto Scaling group.
    c. What environments, such as Dev, Staging, and Prod, will you employ?
4. Choose AMS change types (CTs) that will provision the necessary stacks, or tiers, and prepare the necessary requests for change (RFCs).
5. Submit the RFCs to trigger the deployment of the infrastructure to the appropriate environment.
6. Deploy the application using the application deployment approach selected.
7. Re-work infrastructure and applications as needed.
8. Deploy infrastructure and applications to appropriate follow-on environments, assuming your first deployment is to a non-production environment.

9. Ongoing maintenance is handled by AMS operating the underlying infrastructure, and your operations teams operating the application(s) infrastructures.
10. To decommission an application, terminate the AMS infrastructure for it.

Being well-architected

At AWS we believe that well-architected systems greatly increase the likelihood of business success. The AWS Architecture Center provides expert guidance on architecting in the AWS Cloud.

We recommend the following articles and whitepapers to help you understand the pros and cons of the decisions you must make while building systems on AWS.

Are You Well-Architected?: Introduces the AWS Well-Architected Framework, based around six pillars:

- **Operational excellence**: The operational excellence pillar focuses on running and monitoring systems to deliver business value, and continually improving processes and procedures. Key topics include managing and automating changes, responding to events, and defining standards to successfully manage daily operations.
- **Security**: The security pillar focuses on protecting information and systems. Key topics include confidentiality and integrity of data, identifying and managing who can do what with permissions management, protecting systems, and establishing controls to detect security events.
- **Reliability**: The reliability pillar focuses on the ability to prevent, and quickly recover from failures to meet business and customer demand. Key topics include foundational elements around setup, cross project requirements, recovery planning, and how we handle change.
- **Performance efficiency**: The performance efficiency pillar focuses on using IT and computing resources efficiently. Key topics include selecting the right resource types and sizes based on workload requirements, monitoring performance, and making informed decisions to maintain efficiency as business needs evolve.
- **Cost optimization**: The cost optimization pillar focuses on avoiding unneeded costs. Key topics include understanding and controlling where money is being spent, selecting the most appropriate and right number of resource types, analyzing spend over time, and scaling to meet business needs without overspending.
- **Sustainability**: The sustainability pillar focuses on the ability to continually improve sustainability impacts by reducing energy consumption and increasing efficiency across all

components of a workload by maximizing the benefits from the provisioned resources and minimizing the total resources required.

AWS Well-Architected Framework: Describes how AWS enables customers to assess and improve their cloud-based architectures and better understand the business impact of their design decisions. It addresses general design principles as well as specific best practices and guidance in six conceptual areas that AWS defines as the pillars of the Well-Architected Framework.

Application layer responsibilities vs infrastructure layer responsibilities in AMS

By using AMS, your infrastructure, and all it needs for maintenance and growth, is maintained by AMS. However, whatever you need for line-of-business applications or product applications, is developed, deployed, and maintained by you.

With the help of application deployment tools, such as CodeDeploy and CloudFormation, or Chef, Puppet, Ansible, or Saltstack, your application deployment to your AMS-managed infrastructure can be fully automated.

For details about what AMS does and does not do, see What we do, what we do not do.

Amazon EC2 instance mutability in AMS

You and AMS can maintain the Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instances in your infrastructure in one of two manners:

- Immutable: This model uses Amazon Machine Images (AMIs) *baked* (created) with the necessary features. When deploying an update, the existing instances are torn down and completely replaced with new ones created from an updated AMI. To minimize down-time, this rolling process leaves some instances not updated and accessible while others are being updated until, eventually, the new change is completely deployed.
- Mutable: In this model, the infrastructure is updated with new code being deployed on existing systems in the Cloud. This model is a mix of manually pushing updates and using infrastructure-as-code to deploy updates and does not rely on new AMIs.

These maintenance models are discussed in more detail in later sections of this guide.

Using AWS Secrets Manager with AMS resources

There are many cases where you may need to share secrets with AMS, for example:

- Master password reset for RDS instance
- Certificates for load balancers
- Obtaining long-lived credentials for IAM users from AMS

The safest way to share confidential information with AMS is through the AWS Secrets Manager; follow these steps:

1. Login to the AWS Console using your federated access and the CustomerReadOnly role for single-account landing zone (SALZ); use any of these roles, AWSManagedServicesSecurityOpsRole, AWSManagedServicesAdminRole, and AWSManagedServicesChangeManagementRole for multi-account landing zone (MALZ).
2. Navigate to the AWS Secrets manager console and click **Store a new secret**.
3. Select "Other type of secrets".
4. Enter the secret value as a plain-text and click **Next**.
5. Enter the secret name and description. The name should always starts with "**customer-shared/*** ". For example "**customer-shared/license-2018**". Once you are done continue by clicking **Next**.
6. Use the default KMS encryption.
7. Leave automatic rotation disabled and click **Next**.
8. Review and click **Store**, to save the secret.
9. Reply to us in an AMS service request with the secret name and ARN, so we can identify and retrieve the secret. For information on creating service requests, see Service Request Examples.

Application deployment in AMS

During onboarding, AWS Managed Services (AMS) works with you to determine the infrastructure that you need.

The basic infrastructure includes an AWS virtual private cloud (VPC), communication security via an ADFS forest trust, the basic subnets (DMZ, Shared Services, and Private) mirrored across two availability zones and configured with a managed NAT, bastions, public load balancers, Direct Connect (DX), and required security. Your application resources will be deployed in your private, or customer-applications, subnet. You can learn more about a typical AMS architecture in the AWS Managed Services User Guide.

The infrastructure you deploy once the basics are done, should include all components for your applications and application development.

Application deployment capabilities in AMS

Some of the ways you can deploy applications in AMS. Details on each method follow.

Application Deployment Capabilities Examples

Method Name	Infrastructure Deployment	AMI or Key Element(s)	Application Install
Mutable Applications, AMS AMI			
Manual application deployment	Full stack CT or Tier and Tie CTs	AMS-provided AMI	Submit Access management CT, install application manually.
UserData application deployment with application agent (i.e. Chef, Puppet, etc.)			Use provisioning CT with UserData scripting that installs an application agent, and that script/agent installs the application.

Method Name	Infrastructure Deployment	AMI or Key Element(s)	Application Install
UserData agentless application deployment (i.e. Ansible, Salt SSH, etc.)			Submit Access management CT, install applicati on agent. Deploy application with application deploy tooling.
Mutable Applications, Custom AMI			
Custom AMI applicati on deployment (non-ASG)	Full stack CT or Tier and Tie CTs	Custom AMI. AMS AMI -> customize with application deploy tooling agent -> create EC2 instance (CT) -> create AMI (CT).	Application deploy tooling (i.e. Chef), leveraging agents, deploys application.
AWS Database Migration Service (DMS) application deployment	AWS DMS sync to existing AMS Relational Database stack.	Custom AMI	Customer or partner employs AWS Database Migration Service; AMS verifies AMS components on launch

Method Name	Infrastructure Deployment	AMI or Key Element(s)	Application Install
Workload Ingest application deployment	Partner-migrated instance/AMI and customer-initiated Workload Ingest CT.		Partner migrates instance, creates AMI in customer AMS-managed VPC; customer uses Workload Ingest CT to launch stack in AMS. For details, see AMS Workload Ingest (WIGS).
Immutable Applications			
Custom AMI application deployment (ASG)	Full stack CT or Tier and Tie CTs	AMS AMI -> customize -> create EC2 instance (CT) -> create AMI (CT) -> create Auto Scaling group.	Auto Scaling deploys application with the custom AMI For details, see Tier and Tie App Deployments in AMS.
Mutable or Immutable Applications			

Method Name	Infrastructure Deployment	AMI or Key Element(s)	Application Install
Custom CloudFormation Template application deployment	CloudFormation template	AWS CloudFormation template -> customize/prepare for AMS -> Deployment | Ingestion | Stack from CloudFormation Template | Create (ct-36cn2avfrrj9v).	AMS deploys your application to your account using your custom CloudFormation template, and validates the application deployment. For details, see AMS CloudFormation ingest.
SQL Database Import	AMS operations (Other | Other CT)	On premise SQL database -> .bak file -> AMS RDS SQL database -> Management | Other | Other | Create (ct-1e1xtak34nx76) for the import.	AMS imports your on-premises database to your AMS-managed RDS database. For details, see Database (DB) import to AMS RDS for Microsoft SQL Server.
Database Migration Service (DMS)	AMS operations (Multiple CTs)	On premise database -> DMS replication instance -> DMS replication subnet group -> DMS target endpoint -> DMS source endpoint -> DMS replication task.	AMS imports your on-premises database to your AMS-managed S3 or target RDS database. For details, see AWS Database Migration Service (AWS DMS).

Method Name	Infrastructure Deployment	AMI or Key Element(s)	Application Install
CodeDeploy application deployment	CodeDeploy	Application -> CodeDeploy application -> CodeDeploy deployment group -> CodeDeploy deployment.	Depending on usage, In-place or Blue/Green application deployment. For details, see CodeDeploy requests.

Planning your application deployment in AMS

For a recommended set of questions to be answered to enable application deployments, see Appendix: Application onboarding questionnaire. Questions cover describing your:

- Deployment summary
- Infrastructure deployment components
- Application hosting platform
- Application deployment model
- Application dependencies
- SSL certificates for product applications

AMS Workload Ingest (WIGS)

Topics

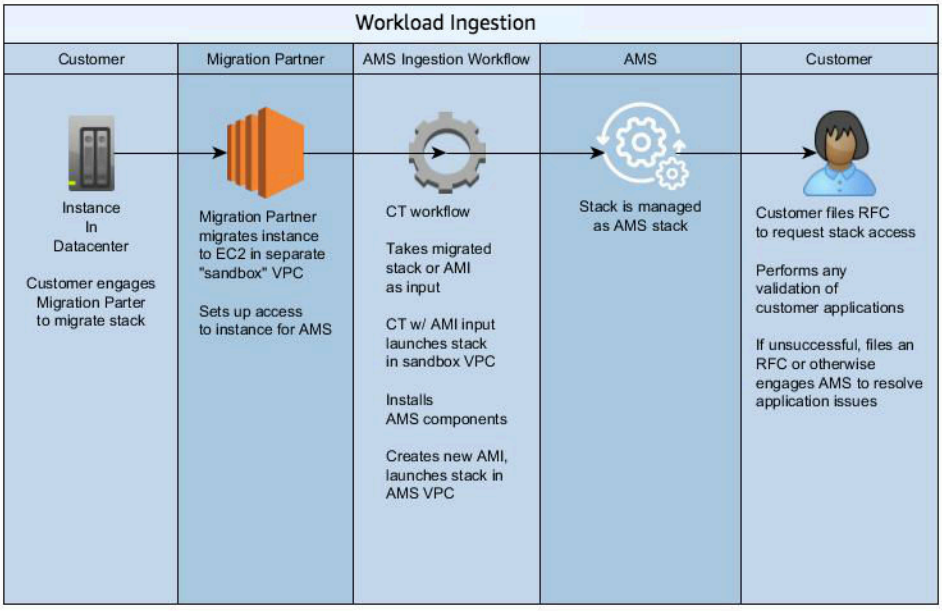
- Migrating Workloads: Prerequisites for Linux and Windows
- How Migration Changes Your Resource
- Migrating Workloads: Standard Process
- Migrating workloads: CloudEndure landing zone (SALZ)
- AMS Tools account (migrating workloads)
- Migrating workloads: Linux pre-ingestion validation
- Migrating workloads: Windows pre-ingestion validation

- Workload Ingest Stack: Creating

Use the AMS workload ingest change type (CT) with an AMS cloud migration partner, to move your existing workloads into an AMS-managed VPC. Using AMS workload ingest, you can create a custom AMS AMI after moving migrated instances onto AMS. This section describes the process, pre-requisites, and steps that your migration partner and yourself take for AMS workload ingestion.

> **Important**
>
> The operating system must be supported by AMS workload ingest. For supported operating systems, see Migrating Workloads: Prerequisites for Linux and Windows.
> Every workload and account is different. AMS will work with you to prepare for a successful result.

The following diagram depicts the AMS workload ingestion process.



Migrating Workloads: Prerequisites for Linux and Windows

Before ingesting a copy of an on-premises instance into AWS Managed Services (AMS), certain prerequisites must be met. These are the prerequisites, including those that differ between Windows and Linux operating systems.

Note

To simplify the process of determining if the instances are ready for ingestion, validation tools for both Windows and Linux have been created. These tools can be downloaded and run directly on your on-premises servers as well as EC2 instances in AWS. Linux Pre-WIGS Validation.zip, Windows Pre-WIGS Validation.zip.

BEFORE YOU BEGIN, for Linux and Windows:

- Perform a full virus scan.
- The instance must have the `customer-mc-ec2-instance-profile` instance profile.
- Install the Amazon EC2 Systems Manager (SSM) Agent and make sure that the SSM Agent is up and running.
- A minimum of 10GB of free disk space on the root volume is recommended to run AMS workload ingest (WIGS). Operationally, AMS recommends disk utilization less than 75% and alerts when disk utilization reaches 85%.
- Determine a time frame for the ingestion with your migration partner.
- The custom AMI exists as an EC2 instance in the target production AMS account (this is the migration partner's responsibility).

Important

The operating system must be supported by AMS workload ingest.

- The following operating systems are supported:
  - Microsoft Windows Server: 2008 R2, 2012, 2012 R2, 2016, 2019 and 2022
  - Linux: Amazon Linux 2023, Amazon Linux 2, and Amazon Linux, CentOS 7.x, CentOS 6.5-6.10, Oracle Linux 7: minor versions 7.5 and above, Oracle Linux 8: minor versions up to 8.3, RHEL 8.x, RHEL 7.x, RHEL 6.5-6.10, SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 15 SP3, SP4, and SAP specific versions, SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 12 SP5, Ubuntu 18.04
- The following AMIs are not supported:
  - Amazon Linux 2023 Minimal AMI.

> **Note**
>
> The AMS API/CLI (amscm and amsskms) endpoints are in the AWS N. Virginia Region, `us-east-1`. Depending on how your authentication is set, and what AWS Region your account and resources are in, you may need to add `--region us-east-1` when issuing commands. You may also need to add `--profile saml`, if that is your authentication method.

LINUX Prerequisites

Observe the requirements listed in Migrating Workloads: Prerequisites for Linux and Windows and ensure the following before submitting a WIGS RFC:

- The latest enhanced networking drivers are installed; see Enhanced Networking on Linux.
- Third-party software components that will conflict with AMS components have been removed:
  - Anti-virus Clients
  - Backup Clients
  - Virtualization software (such as VM Tools or Hyper-V Integration services)
  - Access Management Software (Such as SSSD, Centrify, or PBIS)
- Ensure SSH is properly configured - This temporarily enables private key authentication for SSH. AMS uses this with our configuration management tool. Use these commands:

```
sudo grep -q "^PubkeyAuthentication" /etc/ssh/sshd_config && sudo sed "s/
^PubkeyAuthentication=.*/PubkeyAuthentication yes/" -i /etc/ssh/sshd_config || sudo
 sed "$ a\PubkeyAuthentication yes" -i /etc/ssh/sshd_config
```

```
sudo grep -q "^AuthorizedKeysFile" /etc/ssh/sshd_config && sudo sed "s/
^AuthorizedKeysFile=.*/AuthorizedKeysFile %h\/.ssh\/authorized_keys/" -i /etc/ssh/
sshd_config || sudo sed "$ a\AuthorizedKeysFile %h/.ssh/authorized_keys" -i /etc/ssh/
sshd_config
```

- Ensure Yum is properly configured - RedHat requires licensing to use their Yum Repositories. The instance needs to be licensed via a Satellite Server or RedHat Cloud Server. Use one of these links if licensing is needed:
  - Red Hat Satellite
  - Red Hat Cloud Access

- If you use Red Hat Satellite, WIGS requires the addition of Red Hat Software Collections (RHSCL). The WIGS system uses RHSCL to add a Python3.6 interpreter alongside whatever is configured on the system. To support this solution, the following repositories must be available:
  - rhel-server-rhscl
  - rhel-server-releases-optional

Windows Prerequisites

Observe the requirements listed in Migrating Workloads: Prerequisites for Linux and Windows and ensure the following before submitting a WIGS RFC:

- Powershell version 3 or higher is installed.
- AWS EC2 Config is installed on the instance with the workload that you will migrate.
- Install the AWS drivers that support the latest generation instance types: PV, ENA, and NVMe. You can use the information in these links:
  - Upgrading PV Drivers on Your Windows Instances
  - Enhanced Networking on Windows
  - AWS NVMe Drivers for Windows Instances
  - Part 3: Upgrading AWS NVMe drivers
  - Part 5: Installing the Serial Port Driver for Bare Metal Instances
  - Part 6: Updating Power Management Settings
- (Optional but recommended) Disable critical Services – Set critical application services, such as databases, to disabled, but ensure that any changes are documented so they can be reverted to their original startup mode during the application verification stage.
- (Optional but recommended) Create a Failsafe AMI from the prepared instance:
  - Use the Deployment | Advanced stack components | AMI | Create
  - During creation, add a tag Key=Name, Value=APPLICATION-ID_IngestReady
  - Wait until AMI is created before proceeding
- Third-party software components that will conflict with AMS components have been removed:
  - Anti-virus Clients
  - Backup Clients
  - Virtualization software (such as VM Tools or Hyper-V Integration services)

> **Note**
>
> The End-of-Support Migration Program for Windows server (EMP) includes tooling to migrate your legacy applications from Windows Server 2003, 2008, and 2008 R2 to newer, supported versions on AWS, without any refactoring.

How Migration Changes Your Resource

The ingestion RFC described in this section takes the next step of adding configurations to the instance, once it is migrated to your AMS account, so that AMS can manage it.

The configurations added are AMS-specific as follows.

Changes made to ingested Linux instances:

- Software that is installed:
  - Cloud Init: Used to configure private keys for Jarvis Access.
  - Python 3 (scripting language) for all supported operating systems (Except for CentOS 6, RHEL 8, OracleLinux 7).
  - AWS CloudFormation Python Helper Scripts: AWS CloudFormation provides scripts used to install software and start services on an Amazon EC2 instances.
  - AWS CLI: The AWS CLI is an open source tool built on top of the AWS SDK for Python (Boto) that provides commands for interacting with AWS services.
  - AWS SSM Agent: The SSM Agent processes requests from the Systems Manager service configures the machine as specified in the request.
  - AWS CloudWatch Logs Agent: Sends logs to CloudWatch.
  - AWS CodeDeploy: A deployment service that automates application deployments to Amazon EC2 instances, on-premises instances, or serverless Lambda functions.
  - Ruby: Required for CodeDeploy
  - System Performance Tools (sysstat): Sysstat contains various utilities to monitor system performance and usage activity.
  - AD Bridge (Formerly PowerBroker Identity Services): Joins non-Microsoft hosts to Active Directory domains.
  - Trend Micro Deep Security Agent: Anti-Virus software.
- Software that is changed:

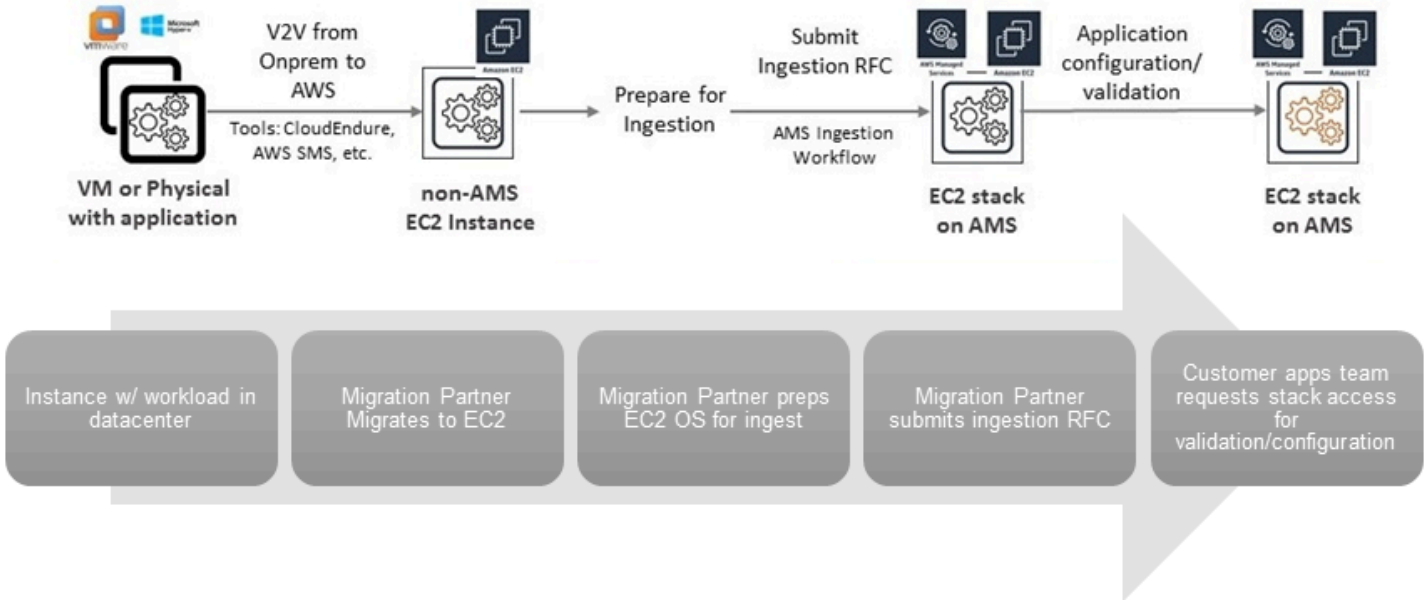
- The instances are configured to use the UTC timezone.

Changes made to ingested Windows instances:

- Software that is installed:
  - AWS Tools for Windows PowerShell: The AWS Tools for PowerShell let developers and administrators manage their AWS services and resources in the PowerShell scripting environment.
  - Trend Micro Deep Security Agent: Anti-Virus protection
  - AMS PowerShell Modules containing PowerShell code for controlling Boot, Active Directory Join, Monitoring, Security, and Logging.
- Software that is changed:
  - Server Message Block (SMB) version 1 is disabled.
  - Windows Remote Management (WinRM) is enabled and configured to listen on port 5986. A firewall rule allowing this inbound port is also created.
- Software that *might be* installed or changed:
  - Microsoft .Net Framework 4.5 (Developer platform), if a version lower then .Net Framework 4.5 is detected.
  - For Windows 2012, ad Windows 2012R2, we upgrade to PowerShell 5.1.

Migrating Workloads: Standard Process

> **Note**
>
> Because two parties are required for this process, this section describes the tasks for each: an AMS Cloud Migration Partner (migration partner), and an Application Owner (you).



1. Migration partner, Set Up:

   a. The migration partner submits a Service Request to AMS for an IAM role for the purpose of migrating your instance. For details on submitting service requests, see Service Request Examples.

   b. The migration partner submits a Admin Access Request. The AMS Operations team provides the migration partner access to your account through the requested IAM role.

2. Migration partner, Migrate Individual Workloads:

   a. The migration partner migrates your non-AWS instance to a subnet in your AMS account through native Amazon EC2 or other migration tooling, with the `customer-mc-ec2-instance-profile` IAM instance profile (must be in the account).

   b. The migration partner submits an RFC with the Deployment | Ingestion | Stack from migration partner migrated instance | Create CT (ct-257p9zjk14ija); for details on creating and submitting this RFC, see Workload Ingest Stack: Creating.

      The execution output of the RFC returns an instance ID, IP address, and AMI ID.

      The migration partner provides you with the instance ID of the workload created in your account.

3. You, Access and Validate the Migration:

   a. Using the execution output provided you (AMI ID, instance ID, and IP address) by the migration partner, submit an access RFC and log into the newly-created AMS stack and

verify that your application is working properly. For details, see Requesting Instance Access.

b. If satisfied, you can continue to use the launched instance as a 1-tier stack and/or use the AMI to create additional stacks, including Auto Scaling groups.

c. If not satisfied with the migration, file a service request and reference the stack and RFC IDs; AMS will work with you to address your concerns.

CloudEndure landing zone workload ingest process is described next.

Migrating workloads: CloudEndure landing zone (SALZ)

This section provides information on setting up an intermediate migration single-account landing zone (SALZ) for CloudEndure (CE) cutover instances to be available for a workload ingest (WIGS) RFC.

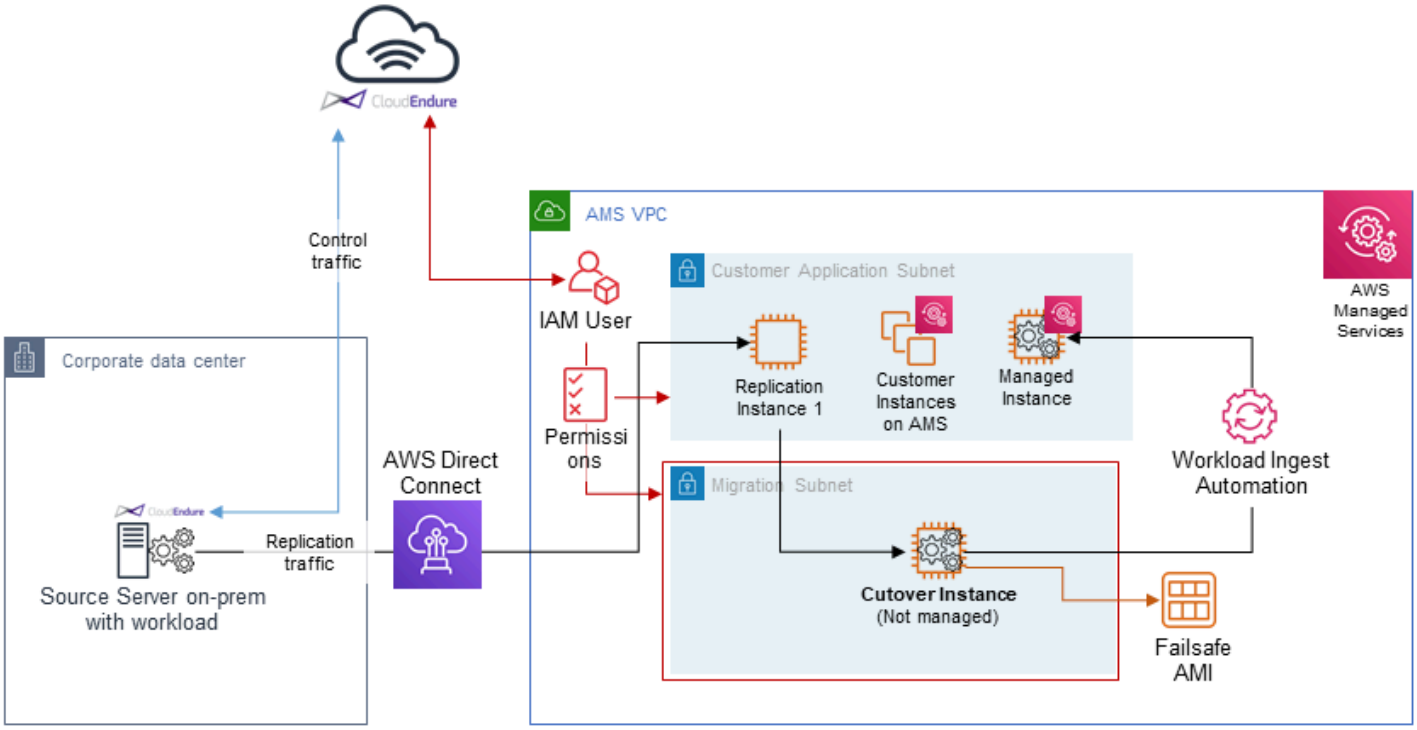
To learn more about CloudEndure, see CloudEndure Migration.

> **Note**
>
> This is a predefined, security hardened, migration LZ and pattern.

Prerequisites:

- A customer AMS account
- Network and access integration between AMS account and the customer on-premise
- A CloudEndure account
- A pre-approval workflow for an AMS Security review and signoff, run with your CA and/or CSDM, (for example, misuse of the IAM user permanent credentials provides the ability to create/delete instances and security groups)

> **Note**
>
> Specific preparation and migration processes are described in this section.



Preparation: You and AMS operator:

1. Prepare a Request for Change (RFC) with the Management | Other | Other | Update change type to AMS for the following resources and updates. You can submit separate Other | Other Update RFCs, or one. For details on that RFC/CT, see Other | Other Update with these requests:

   a. Assign a secondary CIDR block in your AMS VPC; a temporary CIDR block that will be removed after the migration is completed. Ensure that the block will not conflict with any existing routes back to your on-premise network. For example, if your AMS VPC CIDR is 10.0.0.0/16, and there is a route back to your on-premise network of 10.1.0.0/16, then the temporary secondary CIDR could be 10.255.255.0/24. For information on AWS CIDR blocks, see VPC and Subnet Sizing.

   b. Create a new, private, subnet inside the initial-garden AMS VPC. Example name: `migration-temp-subnet`.

   c. Create a new route table for the subnet with only local VPC and NAT (Internet) routes, to avoid conflicts with the source server during instance cutover and possible outages. Ensure outbound traffic to the Internet is allowed for patch downloads, and so that AMS WIGS pre-requisites can be downloaded and installed.

   d. Update your Managed AD security group to allow inbound and outbound traffic to/from `migration-temp-subnet`. Also request that your EPS load balancer (ELB) security group

(ex: `mc-eps-McEpsElbPrivateSecurityGroup-M790XBZEEX74`) be updated to allow the new, private, subnet (i.e. `migration-temp-subnet`). If the traffic from the dedicated CloudEndure (CE) subnet is not allowed on all three TCP ports, WIGS ingestion will fail.

e. Finally, request a new CloudEndure IAM policy and IAM user. The policy needs your correct account number, and the subnet IDs in the `RunInstances` statement should be: your <Customer Application Subnet(s) + Temp Migration Subnet>.

To see an AMS pre-approved IAM CloudEndure policy: Unpack the WIGS Cloud Endure Landing Zone Example file and open the `customer_cloud_endure_policy.json`.

> **Note**
>
> If you want a more permissive policy, discuss what you need with your CloudArchitect/CSDM and obtain, if needed, an AMS Security Review and Signoff before submitting an RFC implementing the policy.

2. Your preparation steps to use CloudEndure for AMS workload ingestion are done and, if your migration partner has completed their preparation steps, migration is ready to be performed. The WIGS RFC is submitted by your migration partner.

> **Note**
>
> IAM user keys won't be directly shared, but must be typed into the CloudEndure management console by the AMS operator in a screen-sharing session.

Preparation: Migration Partner and AMS Operator:

1. Create CloudEndure migration project.

   a. During project creation, have AMS type-in IAM user credentials in screen-sharing sessions.

   b. In **Replication Settings** -> **Choose the subnet where the Replication Servers will be launched**, select **customer-application-x** subnet.

   c. In **Replication Settings** -> **Choose the Security Groups to apply to the Replication Servers**, select both Sentinel security groups (Private Only and EgressAll).

2. Define cutover options for the machines (instances).

a. Subnet: **migration-temp-subnet**.

b. Security Group: Both "Sentinel" security groups (Private Only and EgressAll).

   Cutover instances must be able to communicate to the AMS Managed AD and to AWS public endpoints.

c. Elastic IP: **None**

d. Public IP: **no**

e. IAM role: **customer-mc-ec2-instance-profile**

   The IAM role must allow for SSM communication. Better to use AMS default.

f. Set tags as per convention.

Migration: Migration Partner:

1. Create a dummy stack on AMS. You use the stack ID to gain access to the bastions.
2. Install the CloudEndure (CE) agent on the source server. For details, see Installing the Agents.
3. Create local admin credentials on the source server.
4. Schedule a short cutover window and click **Cutover**, when ready. This finalizes the migration and redirects users to the target AWS Region.
5. Request stack Admin access to the dummy stack, see Admin Access Request.
6. Log into the bastion, then to the cutover instance using the local admin credentials you created.
7. Create a failsafe AMI. For details on creating AMIs, see AMI Create.
8. Prepare the instance for ingestion, see Migrating Workloads: Prerequisites for Linux and Windows.
9. Run WIGS RFC against the instance, see Workload Ingest Stack: Creating.

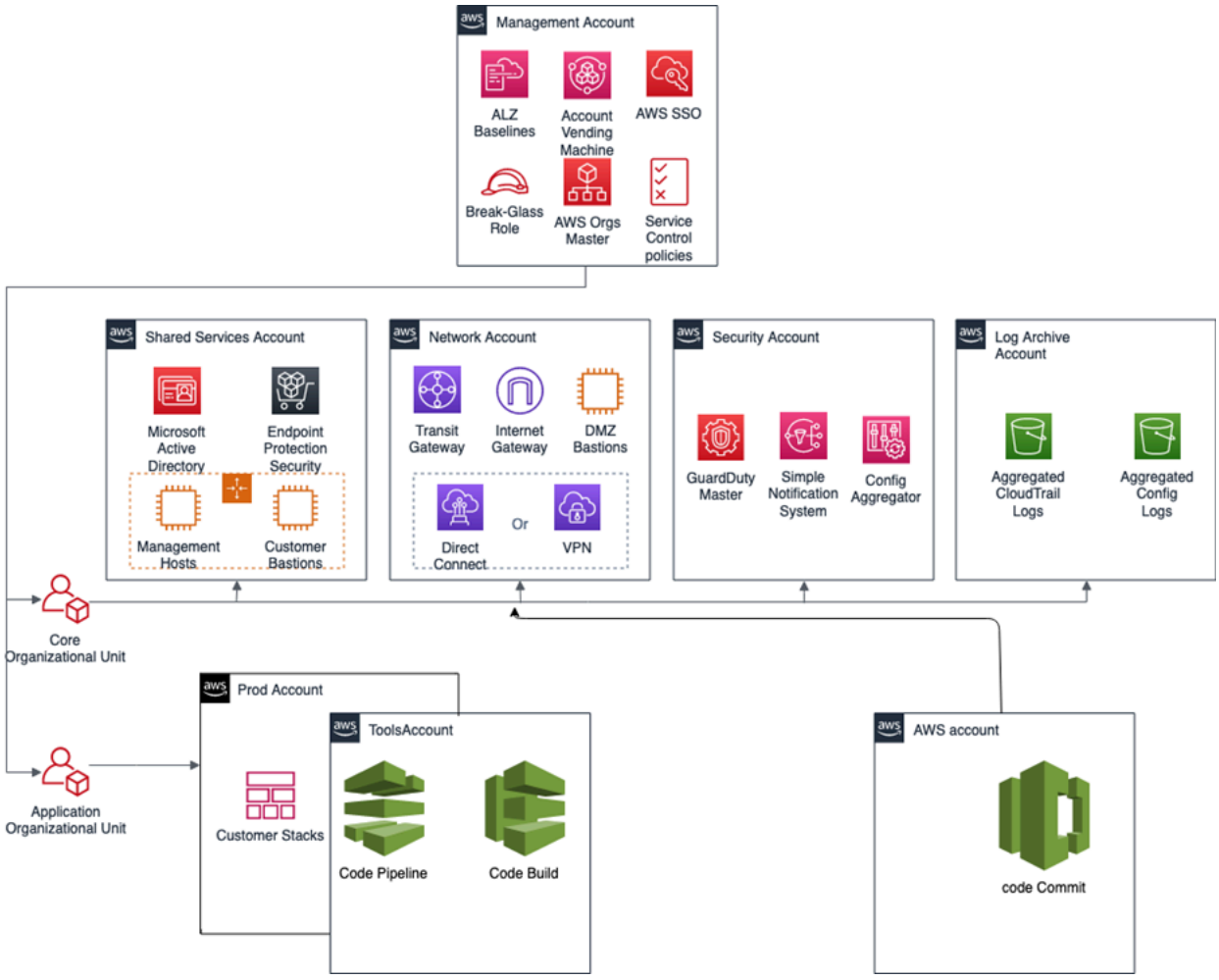
AMS Tools account (migrating workloads)

Your Multi-Account Landing Zone tools account (with VPC) helps accelerate migration efforts, increases your security position, reduces cost and complexity, and standardizes your usage pattern.

A tools account provides the following:

- A well-defined boundary for access to replication instances for system integrators outside of your production workloads.
- Enables you to create an isolated chamber to check a workload for malware, or unknown network routes, before placing it into an account with other workloads.
- As a defined account setup, it provides faster time to onboard and get set up for migrating workloads.
- Isolated network routes to secure traffic from on-premise -> CloudEndure -> Tools account -> AMS ingested image. Once an image has been ingested, you can share the image to the destination account via an AMS Management | Advanced stack components | AMI | Share (ct-1eiczxw8ihc18) RFC.

High level architecture diagram:



Use the Deployment | Managed landing zone | Management account | Create tools account (with VPC) change type (ct-2j7q1hgf26x5c), to quickly deploy a tools account and instantiate a Workload

Ingestion process within a Multi-Account Landing Zone environment. See Management account, Tools account: Creating (with VPC).

Note

We recommend having two availability zones (AZs), since this is a migration hub.
By default, AMS creates the following two security groups (SGs) in every account. Confirm that these two SGs are present. If they are not present, please open a new service request with the AMS team to request them.

- SentinelDefaultSecurityGroupPrivateOnlyEgressAll
- InitialGarden-SentinelDefaultSecurityGroupPrivateOnly

Ensure that CloudEndure replication instances are created in the private subnet where there are routes back to on-premise. You can confirm that by ensuring that the route tables for the private subnet has a default route back to TGW. However, performing a CloudEndure machine cut over should go into the "isolated" private subnet where there is no route back to on-premise, only Internet outbound traffic is allowed. It is critical to ensure cutover occurs in the isolated subnet to avoid potential issues to the on-premise resources.

Prerequisites:

1. Either **Plus** or **Premium** support level.
2. The application account IDs for the KMS key where the AMIs are deployed.
3. The tools account, created as described previously.

AWS Application Migration Service (AWS MGN)

AWS Application Migration Service (AWS MGN) can be used in your MALZ Tools account through the `AWSManagedServicesMigrationRole` IAM role that is created automatically during Tools account provisioning. You can use AWS MGN to migrate applications and databases that run on supported versions of Windows and Linux operating systems.

For the most up-to-date information on AWS Region support, see the AWS Regional Services List.

If your preferred AWS Region is not currently supported by AWS MGN, or the operating system on which your applications run is not currently supported by AWS MGN, consider using the CloudEndure Migration in your Tools account instead.

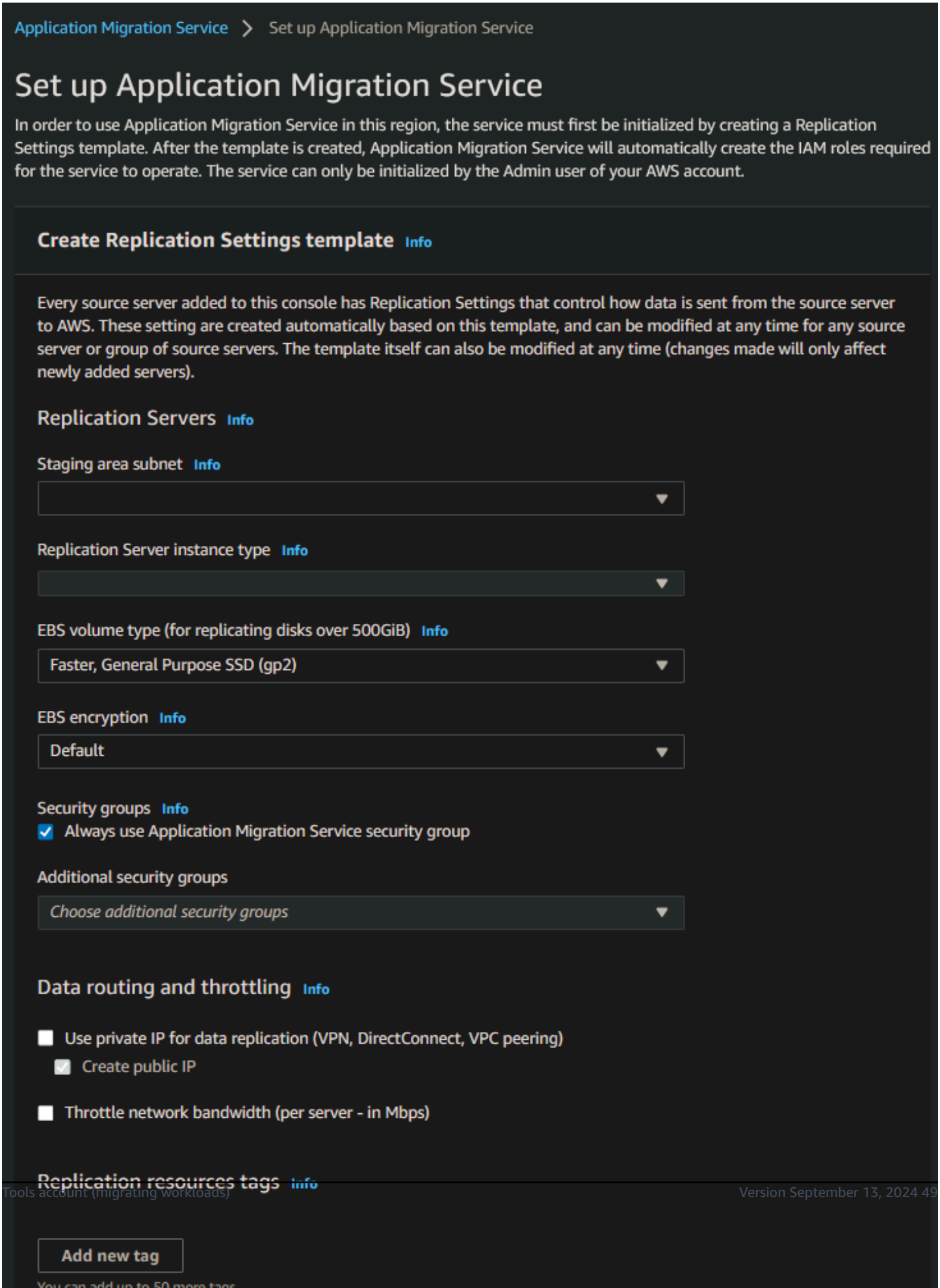
Requesting AWS MGN Initialization

AWS MGN must be initialized by AMS before first use. To request this for a new Tools account, submit a Management | Other | Other RFC from the Tools account with these details:

```
RFC Subject=Please initialize AWS MGN in this account
RFC Comment=Please click 'Get started' on the MGN welcome page here:

    https://console.aws.amazon.com/mgn/home?region=MALZ_PRIMARY_REGION#/welcome using
 all default values
    to 'Create template' and complete the initialization process.
```

Once AMS successfully completes the RFC and initializes AWS MGN in your Tools account, you can use `AWSManagedServicesMigrationRole` to edit the default template for your requirements.


Application Migration Service > Set up Application Migration Service
Set up Application Migration Service
In order to use Application Migration Service in this region, the service must first be initialized by creating a Replication Settings template. After the template is created, Application Migration Service will automatically create the IAM roles required for the service to operate. The service can only be initialized by the Admin user of your AWS account.
Create Replication Settings template Info
Every source server added to this console has Replication Settings that control how data is sent from the source server to AWS. These setting are created automatically based on this template, and can be modified at any time for any source server or group of source servers. The template itself can also be modified at any time (changes made will only affect newly added servers).
Replication Servers Info
Staging area subnet Info
Replication Server instance type Info
EBS volume type (for replicating disks over 500GiB) Info
Faster, General Purpose SSD (gp2)
EBS encryption Info
Default
Security groups Info
Always use Application Migration Service security group
Additional security groups
Choose additional security groups
Data routing and throttling Info
Use private IP for data replication (VPN, DirectConnect, VPC peering)
Create public IP
Throttle network bandwidth (per server - in Mbps)
Replication resources tags Info
Add new tag
You can add up to 50 more tags

Enable access to the new AMS Tools account

Once the tools account is created, AMS provides you with an account ID. Your next step is to configure access to the new account. Follow these steps.

1. Update the appropriate Active Directory groups to the appropriate account IDs.

   New AMS-created accounts are provisioned with the ReadOnly role policy as well as a role to allow users to file RFCs.

   The Tools account also has an additional IAM role and user available:

   - IAM role: `AWSManagedServicesMigrationRole`
   - IAM user: `customer_cloud_endure_user`

2. Request policies and roles to allow service integration team members to set up the next level of tools.

   Navigate to the AMS console and file the following RFCs:

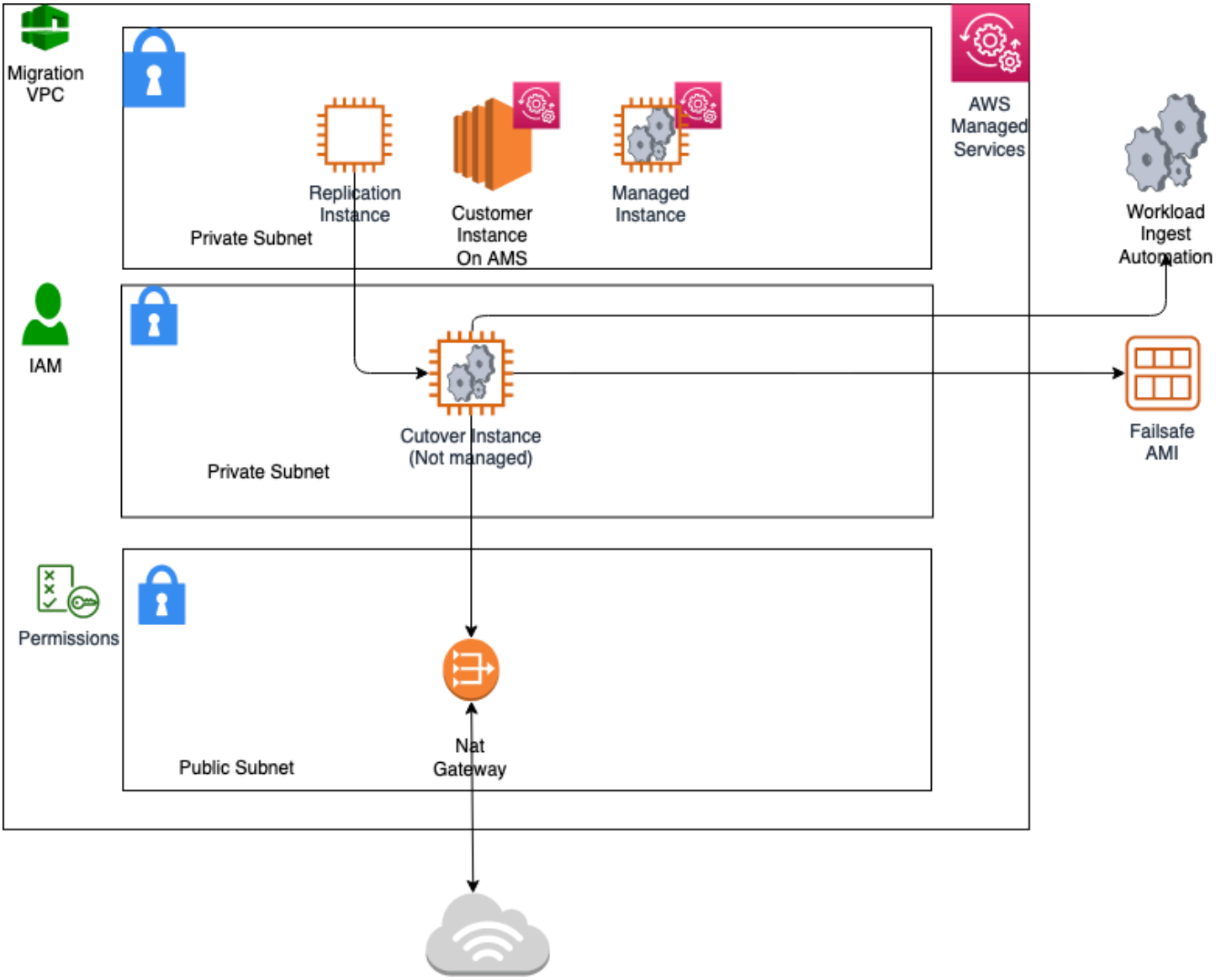
   a. Create KMS key. Use either Create KMS Key (auto) or Create KMS Key (managed automation).

      As you use KMS to encrypt ingested resources, using a single KMS key that is shared with the rest of the Multi-Account Landing Zone application accounts, provides security for ingested images where they can be decrypted in the destination account.

   b. Share the KMS key.

      Use the Management | Advanced stack components | KMS key | Share (managed automation) change type (ct-05yb337abq3x5) to request that the new KMS key be shared with your application accounts where ingested AMIs will reside.

Example graphic of a final account setup:



Example AMS pre-approved IAM CloudEndure policy

To see an AMS pre-approved IAM CloudEndure policy: Unpack the WIGS Cloud Endure Landing Zone Example file and open the `customer_cloud_endure_policy.json`.

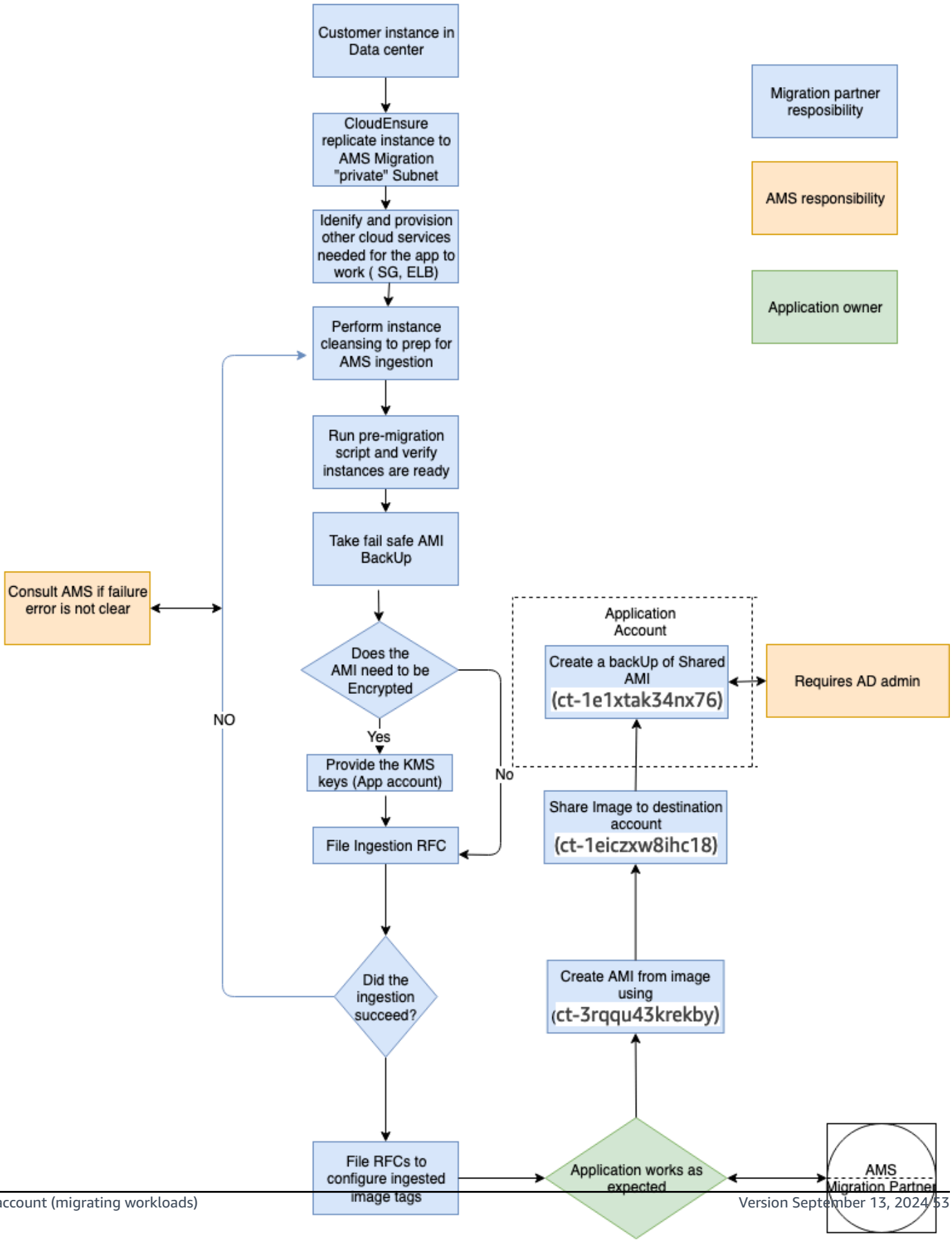
Testing AMS Tools account connectivity and end-to-end setup

1. Start with configuring CloudEndure and installing the CloudEndure agent on a server that will replicate to AMS.
2. Create a project in CloudEndure.
3. Enter the AWS credentials shared when you performed the prerequisites, though secrets manager.

4. In **Replication settings**:
   a. Select both AMS "Sentinel" security groups (Private Only and EgressAll) for the **Choose the Security Groups to apply to the Replication Servers** option.
   b. Define cutover options for the machines (instances). For information, see Step 5. Cut over
   c. **Subnet**: Private subnet.
5. **Security Group**:
   a. Select both AMS "Sentinel" security groups (Private Only and EgressAll).
   b. Cutover instances have to communicate to the AMS-managed Active Directory (MAD) and to AWS public endpoints:
      i. **Elastic IP**: None
      ii. **Public IP**: no
      iii. **IAM role**: customer-mc-ec2-instance-profile
   c. Set tags as per your internal tagging convention.
6. Install the CloudEndure agent on the machine and look for the replication instance to come up in your AMS account in the EC2 console.

The AMS ingestion process:

AMS Ingestion Process



AMS Tools account hygiene

You'll want to clean up after you are done in the account have shared the AMI and no longer have a need for the replicated instances:

- Post instance WIGs ingestion:
  - Cutover instance: At a minimum, stop or terminate this instance, after the work has been completed, via the AWS console
  - Pre-Ingestion AMI backups: Remove once the instance has been ingested and the on-premise instance terminated
  - AMS-ingested instances: Turn off the stack or terminate once the AMI has been shared
  - AMS-ingested AMIs: Delete once sharing with the destination account is completed
- End of migration clean up: Document the resources deployed through Developer mode to ensure clean-up happens on regular basis, for example:
  - Security groups
  - Resources created via Cloud-formation
  - Network ACK
  - Subnet
  - VPC
  - Route Table
  - Roles
  - Users and accounts

Migration at scale - Migration Factory

See Introducing AWS CloudEndure Migration Factory Solution.

Migrating workloads: Linux pre-ingestion validation

You can validate that your instance is ready for ingestion into your AMS account. The workload ingest (WIGS) pre-ingestion validation performs checks such as operating system type, available disk space, the existence of conflicting third party software, etc. When executed, the WIGS pre-ingestion validation produces an on-screen table, with an optional log file. The results provide a pass/fail status for each validation check along with the reason for any failures. In addition, you can customize the validation tests to suit your needs.

Frequently asked questions:

- **How do I use Linux WIGS pre-ingestion validation?**

  Follow these steps to download and use the AMS Linux WIGS pre-ingestion validation scripts:

  1. Download a ZIP file with the validation scripts

     Linux WIGS Pre-ingestion Validation zip file.
  2. Unzip attached rules to a directory of your choice.
  3. Follow the instructions in the **readme.md** file.

- **What validations are performed by the Linux WIGS pre-ingestion validation?**

  The AMS Linux WIGS pre-ingestion validation solution validates the following:

  1. There are at least 5 Gigabytes free on the boot volume.
  2. The operating system is supported by AMS.
  3. The instance has a specific instance profile.
  4. The instance does not contain Antivirus software or Virtualization software.
  5. SSH is properly configured.
  6. The instance has access to Yum Repositories.
  7. Enhanced networking drivers are installed.
  8. The instance has the SSM Agent and it is running.

- **Why is there support for a custom configuration file?**

  The scripts are designed to run on both on-premise physical servers and on AWS EC2 instances. However, as shown in the list above, some tests will fail when run on-premises. For example, a physical server in a datacenter would not have an instance profile. In cases like these, you can edit the configuration file to skip the instance profile test to avoid confusion.

- **How do I ensure I have the latest version of the script?**

  An up-to-date version of the Linux WIGS Pre-Ingestion Validation solution will be available under **AMS Helper Files** section on the main Documentation page.

- **Is the script read-only?**

  The script is designed to be read-only except for the log files it produces, but best practices should be followed to run the script in a non-production environment.

- **Is WIGS pre-ingestion validation available for Windows?**

Yes. It is available under the **AMS Helper Files** section on the main Documentation page.

Migrating workloads: Windows pre-ingestion validation

You can use the pre-WIGs validator script to validate that your instance is ready for ingestion into your AMS account. The workload ingest (WIGS) pre-ingestion validation performs checks such as operating system type, available disk space, the existence of conflicting third party software, and so on. When run, the WIGS pre-ingestion validation produces an on-screen table and an optional log file. The results provide a pass/fail status for each validation check along with the failure reason. In addition, you can customize the validation tests.

Frequently asked questions:

- **How do I use Windows WIGS pre-ingestion validation?**

  You can run the validation from a GUI and web browser, or you can use Windows PowerShell, SSM Run Command, or SSM Session Manager.

  Option 1: Run from a GUI and web browser

  To run the Windows pre-WIGs validation from a GUI and web browser, do the following:

  1. Download a ZIP file with the validation scripts:

     Windows WIGS Pre-ingestion Validation ZIP file.
  2. Unzip attached rules to a directory of your choice.
  3. Follow the instructions in the **README.md** file.

  Option 2: Run from Windows PowerShell, SSM Run Command, or SSM Session Manager

  Windows 2016 and later

  1. Download the ZIP file with the validation scripts.

     ```
     $DestinationFile = "$env:TEMP\WIGValidation.zip"

     $Bucket = 'https://docs.aws.amazon.com/managedservices/latest/appguide/samples/
     windows-prewigs-validation.zip'
     $DestinationFile = "$env:TEMP\WIGValidation.zip"
     $ScriptFolder = "$env:TEMP\AWSManagedServices.PreWigs.Validation"
     ```

2. Remove existing files from `C:\Users\AppData\Local\Temp\AWSManagedServices.PreWigs.Validation`.

```
Remove-Item $scriptFolder -Recurse -Force -ErrorAction Ignore
```

3. Invoke the script.

```
Invoke-WebRequest -Uri $bucket -OutFile $DestinationFile
Add-Type -Assembly "system.io.compression.filesystem"
```

4. Unzip attached files to a directory of your choice.

```
[io.compression.zipfile]::ExtractToDirectory($DestinationFile, $env:TEMP)
```

5. Run the validation script interactively and view the results.

```
Import-Module .\AWSManagedServices.PreWigs.Validation.psm1 -force
Invoke-PreWIGsValidation -RunWithoutExitCodes
```

6. (Optional) To capture the error codes listed in the **Exit Codes** section, run the script without the `RunWithoutExitCodes` option. Note that this command terminates the active PowerShell session.

```
Import-Module .\AWSManagedServices.PreWigs.Validation.psm1 -force
Invoke-PreWIGsValidation
```

Windows 2012 R2 and earlier

If you're running Windows Server 2012R2 or below, you must set TLS before you download the zip file. To set TLS, complete the following steps:

1. Download the ZIP file with the validation scripts.

```
$DestinationFile = "$env:TEMP\WIGValidation.zip"

$Bucket = 'https://docs.aws.amazon.com/managedservices/latest/appguide/samples/
windows-prewigs-validation.zip'
$DestinationFile = "$env:TEMP\WIGValidation.zip"
$ScriptFolder = "$env:TEMP\AWSManagedServices.PreWigs.Validation"
```

2. If there are existing validation files, then remove them.

```
Remove-Item $scriptFolder -Recurse -Force -ErrorAction Ignore
```

3. Set the TLS version.

```
[System.Net.ServicePointManager]::SecurityProtocol = 'TLS12'
```

4. Download WIG validation.

```
Invoke-WebRequest -Uri $bucket -OutFile $DestinationFile
Add-Type -Assembly "system.io.compression.filesystem"
```

5. Unzip the attached rules to a directory of your choice.

```
[io.compression.zipfile]::ExtractToDirectory($DestinationFile, $env:TEMP)
```

6. Run the validation script interactively and view the results.

```
Import-Module .\AWSManagedServices.PreWigs.Validation.psm1 -force
Invoke-PreWIGsValidation -RunWithoutExitCodes
```

7. (Optional) To capture the error codes listed in the **Exit Codes** section, run the script without the RunWithoutExitCodes option. Note that this command terminates the active PowerShell session.

```
Import-Module .\AWSManagedServices.PreWigs.Validation.psm1 -force
Invoke-PreWIGsValidation
```

> **Note**
>
> You can download and run the PowerShell scripts. To do this, download the pre-wigs-validation-powershell-scripts.zip.

- **What validations are performed by the Windows WIGS Pre-Ingestion Validation?**

The AMS Windows WIGS pre-ingestion validation solution validates the following:

1. There is at least 10 Gigabytes free on the boot volume.
2. The operating system is supported by AMS.
3. The instance has a specific instance profile.

4. The instance does not contain antivirus software or virtualization software.
5. DHCP is enabled on at least one network adapter.
6. The instance is ready for Sysprep.
   - For 2008 R2 and 2012 Base and R2, Sysprep verifies that:
     - There is an unattend.xml file
     - The sppnp.dll file(if present) is not corrupt
     - The Operating System has not been upgraded
     - Sysprep has not run more than the maximum number of times per Microsoft guidelines
   - For 2016 and above, all of above checks are skipped as neither cause problems for that OS
7. The Windows management instrumentation (WMI) subsystem is healthy.
8. Required drivers are installed.
9. The SSM Agent and is installed and running.
10. Warning is given to verify if the machine is in grace period due to the RDS License Configuration.
11. Required registry keys are set properly. For more details, see the README in the Pre-ingestion Validation zip file.

- **Why is there support for a custom configuration file?**

  The scripts are designed to run on both on-premise physical servers and on AWS EC2 instances. However, as shown in the list above, some tests will fail when run on-premises. For example, a physical server in a datacenter would not have an instance profile. In cases like these, you can edit the configuration file to skip the instance profile test to avoid confusion.

- **How do I ensure I have the latest version of the script?**

  An up-to-date version of the Windows WIGS pre-ingestion validation solution will be available under the **AMS Helper Files** section on the main Documentation page.

- **Is the script read-only?**

  The script is designed to be read-only except for the log files it produces, but best practices should be followed to run the script in a non-production environment.

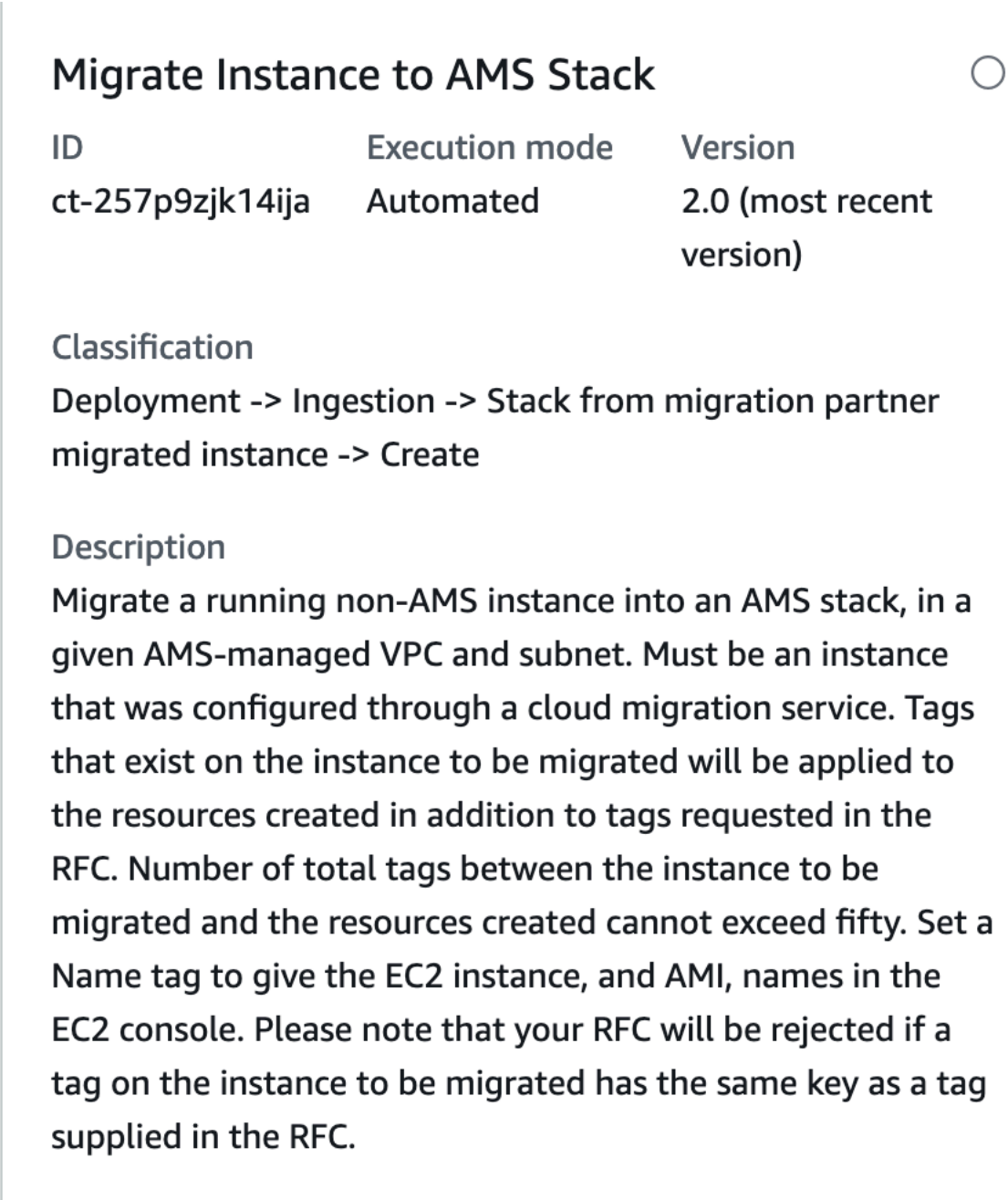
- **Is WIGS Pre-Ingestion Validation available for Linux?**

  Yes. The Linux version launched on 31 October, 2019. It is available under the **AMS Helper Files** section on the main Documentation page.

Workload Ingest Stack: Creating

Migrating an instance to an AMS stack with the Console

Screenshot of this change type in the AMS console:



How it works:

1. Navigate to the **Create RFC** page: In the left navigation pane of the AMS console click **RFCs** to open the RFCs list page, and then click **Create RFC**.

2. Choose a popular change type (CT) in the default **Browse change types** view, or select a CT in the **Choose by category** view.
   - **Browse by change type**: You can click on a popular CT in the **Quick create** area to immediately open the **Run RFC** page. Note that you cannot choose an older CT version with quick create.

     To sort CTs, use the **All change types** area in either the **Card** or **Table** view. In either view, select a CT and then click **Create RFC** to open the **Run RFC** page. If applicable, a **Create with older version** option appears next to the **Create RFC** button.
   - **Choose by category**: Select a category, subcategory, item, and operation and the CT details box opens with an option to **Create with older version** if applicable. Click **Create RFC** to open the **Run RFC** page.
3. On the **Run RFC** page, open the CT name area to see the CT details box. A **Subject** is required (this is filled in for you if you choose your CT in the **Browse change types** view). Open the **Additional configuration** area to add information about the RFC.

   In the **Execution configuration** area, use available drop-down lists or enter values for the required parameters. To configure optional execution parameters, open the **Additional configuration** area.
4. When finished, click **Run**. If there are no errors, the **RFC successfully created** page displays with the submitted RFC details, and the initial **Run output**.
5. Open the **Run parameters** area to see the configurations you submitted. Refresh the page to update the RFC execution status. Optionally, cancel the RFC or create a copy of it with the options at the top of the page.

> **Note**
>
> If the RFC is rejected, the execution output includes a link to Amazon CloudWatch logs. AMS Workload Ingest (WIGS) RFCs are rejected when requirements are not met; for example, if anti-virus software is detected on the instance. The CloudWatch logs will include information about the failed requirement and the actions to take for remediation.

Migrating an instance to an AMS stack with the CLI

How it works:

1. Use either the Inline Create (you issue a `create-rfc` command with all RFC and execution parameters included), or Template Create (you create two JSON files, one for the RFC parameters and one for the execution parameters) and issue the `create-rfc` command with the two files as input. Both methods are described here.
2. Submit the RFC: `aws amscm submit-rfc --rfc-id` *`ID`* command with the returned RFC ID.

   Monitor the RFC: `aws amscm get-rfc --rfc-id` *`ID`* command.

To check the change type version, use this command:

```
aws amscm list-change-type-version-summaries --filter
 Attribute=ChangeTypeId,Value=CT_ID
```

Note

You can use any `CreateRfc` parameters with any RFC whether or not they are part of the schema for the change type. For example, to get notifications when the RFC status changes, add this line, `--notification "{\"Email\": {\"EmailRecipients\" : [\"email@example.com\"]}}"` to the RFC parameters part of the request (not the execution parameters). For a list of all CreateRfc parameters, see the AMS Change Management API Reference.

You can use the AMS CLI to create an AMS instance from a non-AMS instance migrated to an AMS account.

Note

Be sure you have followed the prerequisites; see Migrating Workloads: Prerequisites for Linux and Windows.

To check the change type version, use this command:

```
aws amscm list-change-type-version-summaries --filter
 Attribute=ChangeTypeId,Value=CT_ID
```

INLINE CREATE:

Issue the create RFC command with execution parameters provided inline (escape quotes when providing execution parameters inline), and then submit the returned RFC ID. For example, you can replace the contents with something like this:

```
aws amscm create-rfc --change-type-id "ct-257p9zjk14ija" --change-type-version "2.0" --
title "AMS-WIG-TEST-NO-ACTION" --execution-parameters "{\"InstanceId\":\"INSTANCE_ID\",
\"TargetVpcId\":\"VPC_ID\",\"TargetSubnetId\":\"SUBNET_ID\",\"TargetInstanceType\":
\"t2.large\",\"ApplyInstanceValidation\":true,\"Name\":\"WIG-TEST\",\"Description\":
\"WIG-TEST\",\"EnforceIMDSV2\":\"false\"}"
```

TEMPLATE CREATE:

1. 0utput the execution parameters JSON schema for this change type to a file; example names it MigrateStackParams.json:

   ```
   aws amscm get-change-type-version --change-type-id "ct-257p9zjk14ija" --query
    "ChangeTypeVersion.ExecutionInputSchema" --output text > MigrateStackParams.json
   ```

2. Modify and save the execution parameters JSON file. For example, you can replace the contents with something like this:

   ```
   {
   "InstanceId":          "MIGRATED_INSTANCE_ID",
   "TargetVpcId":         "VPC_ID",
   "TargetSubnetId":      "SUBNET_ID",
   "Name":                "Migrated-Stack",
   "Description":         "Create-Migrated-Stack",
   "EnforceIMDSV2":       "false"
   }
   ```

3. Output the RFC template JSON file; example names it MigrateStackRfc.json:

   ```
   aws amscm create-rfc --generate-cli-skeleton > MigrateStackRfc.json
   ```

4. Modify and save the MigrateStackRfc.json file. For example, you can replace the contents with something like this:

   ```
   {
   "ChangeTypeId":         "ct-257p9zjk14ija",
   "ChangeTypeVersion":    "2.0",
   "Title":                "Migrate-Stack-RFC"
   ```

```
}
```

5. Create the RFC, specifying the MigrateStackRfc file and the MigrateStackParams file:

```
aws amscm create-rfc --cli-input-json file://MigrateStackRfc.json  --execution-
parameters file://MigrateStackParams.json
```

   You receive the ID of the new RFC in the response and can use it to submit and monitor the RFC. Until you submit it, the RFC remains in the editing state and does not start.

   The new instance appears in the Instance list for the application owner's account for the relevant VPC.

6. Once the RFC completes successfully, notify the application owner so he or she can log into the new instance and verify that the workload is operational.

> **Note**
>
> If the RFC is rejected, the execution output includes a link to Amazon CloudWatch logs. AMS Workload Ingest (WIGS) RFCs are rejected when requirements are not met; for example, if anti-virus software is detected on the instance. The CloudWatch logs will include information about the failed requirement and the actions to take for remediation.

Tips

> **Note**
>
> Be sure you have followed the prerequisites; see Migrating Workloads: Prerequisites for Linux and Windows.

> **Note**
>
> If a tag on the instance being migrated has the same key as a tag supplied in the RFC, the RFC fails.

Note

You can specify up to four Target IDs, Ports, and Availability Zones.

Note

If the RFC is rejected, the execution output includes a link to Amazon CloudWatch logs. AMS Workload Ingest (WIGS) RFCs are rejected when requirements are not met; for example, if anti-virus software is detected on the instance. The CloudWatch logs will include information about the failed requirement and the actions to take for remediation.

Note

If the RFC is rejected, the execution output includes a link to Amazon CloudWatch logs. AMS Workload Ingest (WIGS) RFCs are rejected when requirements are not met; for example, if anti-virus software is detected on the instance. The CloudWatch logs will include information about the failed requirement and the actions to take for remediation.

If needed, see Workload ingestion (WIGS) failure.

AMS CloudFormation ingest

The AMS AWS CloudFormation ingest change type (CT) enables you to use your existing CloudFormation templates, with some modifications, to deploy custom stacks in an AMS-managed VPC.

Topics

- CloudFormation Ingest Guidelines, Best Practices, and Limitations
- CloudFormation Ingest: Examples
- Create CloudFormation ingest stack
- Update CloudFormation ingest stack
- Approve a CloudFormation ingest stack changeset
- Update CloudFormation stacks termination protection

- Automated IAM deployments using CFN ingest or stack update CTs in AMS

The AMS CloudFormation ingest process involves the following:

- Prepare and upload your custom CloudFormation template to an S3 bucket, or provide the template inline when creating the RFC. If you are using an S3 bucket with a presigned URL; for more information, see presign.
- Submit the CloudFormation ingest change type to AMS in an RFC. For the CFN ingest change type walkthrough, see Create CloudFormation ingest stack. For CFN ingest examples, see CloudFormation Ingest: Examples.
- Once your stack is created, you can update it, and remediate drift on it; additionally, should the update fail, you can explicitly approve and implement the update. All of these procedures are described in this section.

  For information on CFN drift detection, see New – CloudFormation Drift Detection.

> **Note**
>
> - This change type now has a version 2.0. Version 2.0 is automated; not manually executed. This enables the CT execution to go more quickly. Two new parameters are introduced with this version: **CloudFormationTemplate**, which enables you to paste a custom CloudFormation template into the RFC, and **VpcId**, which enables CloudFormation ingest to be used with AMS multi-account landing zone.
> - Version 1.0 is a manual change type. This means that an AMS operator must take some action before the change type can successfully conclude. At minimum, a review is required. This version also requires the **CloudFormationTemplateS3Endpoint** parameter value to be a pre-signed URL.

CloudFormation Ingest Guidelines, Best Practices, and Limitations

For AMS to process your CloudFormation template, there are some guidelines and restrictions.

Guidelines

To reduce CloudFormation errors while performing CloudFormation ingest, follow these guidelines:

- **Don't embed credentials or other sensitive information in the template** – The CloudFormation template is visible in the CloudFormation console, so you don't want to embed credentials or sensitive data in the template. The template can't contain sensitive information. The following resources are allowed only if you use AWS Secrets Manager for the value:
  - `AWS::RDS::DBInstance` - [MasterUserPassword,TdeCredentialPassword]
  - `AWS::RDS::DBCluster` - [MasterUserPassword]
  - `AWS::ElastiCache::ReplicationGroup` - [AuthToken]

  > **Note**
  >
  > For information about using an AWS Secrets Manager secret in a resource property, see How to create and retrieve secrets managed in AWS Secrets Manager using AWS CloudFormation templates and Using Dynamic References to Specify Template Values.

- **Use Amazon RDS snapshots to create RDS DB instances** – By doing this you avoid having to provide a MasterUserPassword.
- If the template you submit contains an IAM instance profile, it must be prefixed with 'customer'. For example, using an instance profile with the name 'example-instance-profile', causes failure. Instead, use an instance profile with the name 'customer-example-instance-profile'.
- **Don't include any sensitive data in `AWS::EC2::Instance`** - [UserData]. UserData should not contain passwords, API keys, or any other sensitive data. This type of data can be encrypted and stored in an S3 bucket and downloaded onto the instance using UserData.
- **IAM policy creation using CloudFormation templates is supported with constraints** – IAM policies have to be reviewed and approved by AMS SecOps. Currently we only support deploying IAM roles with in-line policies that contain pre-approved permissions. In other cases, IAM policies can't be created using CloudFormation templates because that would override the AMS SecOps process.
- **SSH KeyPairs aren't supported** – Amazon EC2 instances must be accessed through the AMS access management system. The AMS RFC process authenticates you. You cannot include SSH keypairs in CloudFormation templates because you don't have the permissions to create SSH keypairs and override the AMS access management model.
- **Security Group ingress rules are restricted** – You can't have a source CIDR range from 0.0.0.0/0, or a publicly routable address space, with a TCP port that is anything other than 80 or 443.
- **Follow CloudFormation guidelines when writing CloudFormation resource templates** – Ensure that you use the right data type/property name for the resource by referring to the *AWS*

CloudFormation User Guide for that resource. For example, the data type of SecurityGroupIds property in an AWS::EC2::Instance resource is 'List of String values', so ["sg-aaaaaaaa"] is ok (with brackets), but "sg-aaaaaaaa" is not (without brackets).

For more information, see AWS Resource and Property Types Reference.

- **Configure your custom CloudFormation templates to use parameters defined in the AMS CloudFormation ingest CT** – When you configure your CloudFormation template to use parameters defined in the AMS CloudFormation ingest CT, you can reuse the CloudFormation template to create similar stacks by submitting it with changed parameter values in the CT input with the Management | Custom stack | Stack from CloudFormation template | Update CT (ct-361tlo1k7339x). For an example, see CloudFormation Ingest examples: Defining resources.
- **Amazon S3 bucket endpoints with a presigned URL can't be expired** – If you are using an Amazon S3 bucket endpoint with a presigned URL, verify that the presigned Amazon S3 URL isn't expired. A CloudFormation ingest RFC submitted with an expired presigned Amazon S3 bucket URL is rejected.
- **Wait Condition requires signal logic** – Wait Condition is used to coordinate stack resource creation with configuration actions that are external to the stack creation. If you use the Wait Condition resource in the template, CloudFormation waits for a success signal, and it marks stack creation as a failure if the number of success signals aren't made. You need to have a logic for the signal if you use the Wait Condition resource. For more information, see Creating Wait Conditions in a Template.

Best Practices

Following are some best practices you can use to migrate resources using the AMS CloudFormation ingest process:

- **Submit IAM and other policy-related resources in one CT**– If you can use automated CTs such as CloudFormation Ingest to deploy IAM roles, we recommend you do so. In other cases, AMS recommends that you gather all IAM or other policy-related resources and submit them in a single Management | Other | Other | Create change type (ct-1e1xtak34nx76). For example, combine needed all IAM roles, IAM Amazon EC2 instance profiles, IAM policy updates for existing IAM roles, Amazon S3 bucket policies, Amazon SNS/Amazon SQS policies, and so forth, and submit a ct-1e1xtak34nx76 RFC so that these pre-existing resources can simply be referenced inside the future CloudFormation ingest templates.

- **EC2 instances are bootstrapped and successfully joined to the domain** – This is done automatically as a best practice. To ensure that the Amazon EC2 instances launched via a CloudFormation ingest stack are bootstrapped and join the domain successfully, AMS includes a CreationPolicy and an UpdatePolicy for an Auto Scaling group resource (that is, if these policies don't already exist).
- **Amazon RDS DB instance parameter must be specified**– When creating an Amazon RDS database via CloudFormation ingest, you must specify the `DBSnapshotIdentifier` parameter in order to restore from a previous DB snapshot. This is required because CloudFormation ingest does not currently handle sensitive data.

For an example of how to use a CloudFormation template for AMS CloudFormation template ingest, see CloudFormation Ingest: Examples.

Template validation

You can self-validate your CloudFormation template before submitting it to AMS.

Templates submitted to AMS CloudFormation ingest are validated to ensure they are safe to deploy within an AMS account. The validation process checks the following:

- **Supported resources** – Only AMS CloudFormation ingest-supported resources are used. For more information, see Supported Resources.
- **Supported AMIs** – The AMI in the template is an AMS-supported AMI. For information about AMS AMIs, see AMS Amazon Machine Images (AMIs).
- **AMS Shared Services subnet** – The template does not attempt to launch resources into the AMS Shared Services subnet.
- **Resource policies** – There are no overly permissive resource policies, such as a publicly readable or writeable S3 bucket policy. AMS doesn't allow publicly readable or writable S3 buckets in AWS accounts.

Validate with CloudFormation Linter

You can self-validate your CloudFormation template before submitting it to AMS by using the CloudFormation Linter tool.

The CloudFormation Linter tool is the best way to validate your CloudFormation template as it provides validation for resource/property names, data types, and functions. For more information, see aws-cloudformation/cfn-python-lint.

The CloudFormation Linter output of the template shown previously is as follows:

```
$ cfn-lint -t ./testtmpl.json
E3002 Invalid Property Resources/SNSTopic/Properties/Name
./testtmpl.json:6:9
```

To assist with offline validation of CloudFormation templates, AMS has developed a set of pluggable custom validation rules for the CloudFormation Linter tool. They're located on the **Developers Resources** page of the AMS console.

Follow these steps to use CloudFormation pre-ingestion validation scripts:

1. Install the CloudFormation Linter tool. For installation instructions, see aws-cloudformation / cfn-lint .
2. Download a .zip file with validation scripts:

   CFN Lint Custom Rules.
3. Unzip the attached rules to a directory of your choice.
4. Validate your CloudFormation template by running the following command:

   ```
   cfn-lint --template {TEMPLATE_FILE} --append-rules {DIRECTORY_WITH_CUSTOM_RULES}
   ```

CloudFormation ingest stack: CFN validator examples

These examples can help you prepare your template for a successful ingest.

Format validation

Validate that the template contains a "Resources" section, and all resources defined under it have a "Type" value.

```
{
  "AWSTemplateFormatVersion": "2010-09-09",
  "Description" : "Create a SNS topic",
  "Resources": {
```

```
    "SnsTopic": {
      "Type": "AWS::SNS::Topic"
    }
  }
}
```

Validate that the root keys of the template are allowed. Allowed root keys are:

```
[
  "AWSTemplateFormatVersion",
  "Description",
  "Mappings",
  "Parameters",
  "Conditions",
  "Resources",
  "Rules",
  "Outputs",
  "Metadata"
]
```

Manual Managed Automation validation

If the template contains the following resources, automatic validation fails and you'll need a manual review.

The shown policies are high risk areas from a security standpoint. For example, an S3 bucket policy allowing anyone except for specific users or groups to create objects or write permissions, is extremely dangerous. So we validate the policies and approve or deny based on the contents, and those polices cannot be auto-created. We are investigating possible approaches to address this issue.

We currently don’t have automated validation around the following resources.

```
[
    "S3::BucketPolicy",
    "SNS::TopicPolicy",
    "SQS::QueuePolicy"
]
```

Parameter validation

Validate that if a template parameter doesn't have a value provided; it must have a default value.

Resource attribute validation

Required attribute check: Certain attributes must exist for certain resource types.

- "VPCOptions" must exist in `AWS::OpenSearch::Domain`
- "CludsterSubnetGroupName" must exist in `AWS::Redshift::Cluster`

```
{
    "AWS::OpenSearch::Domain": [
      "VPCOptions"
    ],
    "AWS::Redshift::Cluster": [
      "ClusterSubnetGroupName"
    ]
}
```

Disallowed attributes check: Certain attributes must *not* exist for certain resource types.

- "SecretString" must not exist in "AWS::SecretsManager::Secret"
- "MongoDbSettings" must not exist in "AWS::DMS::Endpoint"

```
{
  "AWS::SecretsManager::Secret": [
    "SecretString"
  ],
  "AWS::DMS::Endpoint": [
    "MongoDbSettings"
  ]
}
```

SSM parameter check: For attributes in the following list, values must be specified via Secrets Manager or Systems Manager Parameter Store (Secure String Parameter):

```
{
  "RDS::DBInstance": [
    "MasterUserPassword",
    "TdeCredentialPassword"
  ],
  "RDS::DBCluster": [
    "MasterUserPassword"
```

```
  ],
  "ElastiCache::ReplicationGroup": [
    "AuthToken"
  ],
  "DMS::Certificate": [
    "CertificatePem",
    "CertificateWallet"
  ],
  "DMS::Endpoint": [
    "Password"
  ],
  "CodePipeline::Webhook": {
    "AuthenticationConfiguration": [
        "SecretToken"
    ]
  },
  "DocDB::DBCluster": [
    "MasterUserPassword"
  ]
},
```

Some attributes must comply with certain patterns; for example, IAM instance profile names must not start with AMS reserved prefixes, and the attribute value must match the specific regex as shown:

```
{
    "AWS::EC2::Instance": {
      "IamInstanceProfile": [
        "^(?!arn:aws:iam|ams|Ams|AMS|AWSManagedServices|Managed_Services|mc|Mc|MC|
sentinel|Sentinel).+",
        "arn:aws:iam::(\\$\\{AWS::AccountId\\}|[0-9]+):instance-profile/(?!ams|Ams|AMS|
AWSManagedServices|Managed_Services|mc|Mc|MC|sentinel|Sentinel).+"
      ]
    },
    "AWS::AutoScaling::LaunchConfiguration": {
      "IamInstanceProfile": [
        "^(?!arn:aws:iam|ams|Ams|AMS|AWSManagedServices|Managed_Services|mc|Mc|MC|
sentinel|Sentinel).+",
        "arn:aws:iam::(\\$\\{AWS::AccountId\\}|[0-9]+):instance-profile/(?!ams|Ams|AMS|
AWSManagedServices|Managed_Services|mc|Mc|MC|sentinel|Sentinel).+"
      ]
    },
    "AWS::EC2::LaunchTemplate": {
```

```
      "LaunchTemplateData.IamInstanceProfile.Name": [
        "^(?!ams|Ams|AMS|AWSManagedServices|Managed_Services|mc|Mc|MC|sentinel|
Sentinel).+"
      ],
      "LaunchTemplateData.IamInstanceProfile.Arn": [
        "arn:aws:iam::(\\$\\{AWS::AccountId\\}|[0-9]+):instance-profile\/(?!ams|Ams|
AMS|AWSManagedServices|Managed_Services|mc|Mc|MC|sentinel|Sentinel).+"
      ]
    }
}
```

Resource validation

Only allowlisted resources can be specified in the template; those resources are described in Supported Resources.

EC2 stacks and Auto Scaling groups (ASGs) are not allowed in the same stack due to patching limitations.

Security group ingress rule validation

- For requests that come from the CFN Ingest Create or Stack Update CT change types:
  - If (`IpProtocol` is tcp or 6) AND (Port is 80 or 443) , there are no restrictions around the `CidrIP` value
  - Otherwise, the `CidrIP` cannot be 0.0.0.0/0
- For requests that come from Service Catalog (Service Catalog products):
  - In addition to the CFN Ingest Create or Stack Update CT change type validation, the port in `management_ports` with the protocol in `ip_protocols` can only be accessed via `allowed_cidrs`:

```
{
      "ip_protocols": ["tcp", "6", "udp", "17"],
      "management_ports": [22, 23, 389, 636, 1494, 1604, 2222, 3389, 5900, 5901,
 5985, 5986],
      "allowed_cidrs": ["10.0.0.0/8", "100.64.0.0/10", "172.16.0.0/12",
 "192.168.0.0/16"]
  }
```

Limitations

The following features and functionality currently aren't supported by the AMS CloudFormation ingest process.

- **YAML** – Not supported. Only JSON-based CloudFormation templates are supported.
- **Nested stacks** – Instead, architect your application infrastructure to use a single template. Or, alternatively you can make use of cross-stack referencing to separate resources across multiple stacks where one resource has a dependency on another. For more information, see Walkthrough: Refer to Resource Outputs in Another AWS CloudFormation Stack.
- **CloudFormation stack sets** – Not supported, due to security implications.
- **IAM resource creation using CloudFormation templates** – Only IAM roles are supported, due to security implications.
- **Sensitive data** – Not supported. Do not include sensitive data in the template or in the parameter values. If you need to reference sensitive data, use Secrets Manager to store and retrieve these values. For information about using AWS Secrets Managers secrets in a resource property, see How to create and retrieve secrets managed in AWS Secrets Manager using AWS CloudFormation templates and Using Dynamic References to Specify Template Values.

Supported Resources

The following AWS resources are supported in the AMS CloudFormation ingest process.

CloudFormation Ingest Stack: Supported resources

The instance operating system must be supported by AMS workload ingestion. Only those AWS resources listed here are supported.

- Amazon API Gateway
  - AWS::ApiGateway::Account
  - AWS::ApiGateway::ApiKey
  - AWS::ApiGateway::Authorizer
  - AWS::ApiGateway::BasePathMapping
  - AWS::ApiGateway::ClientCertificate
  - AWS::ApiGateway::Deployment

- AWS::ApiGateway::DocumentationPart
- AWS::ApiGateway::DocumentationVersion
- AWS::ApiGateway::DomainName
- AWS::ApiGateway::GatewayResponse
- AWS::ApiGateway::Method
- AWS::ApiGateway::Model
- AWS::ApiGateway::RequestValidator
- AWS::ApiGateway::Resource
- AWS::ApiGateway::RestApi
- AWS::ApiGateway::Stage
- AWS::ApiGateway::UsagePlan
- AWS::ApiGateway::UsagePlanKey
- AWS::ApiGateway::VpcLink

- Amazon API Gateway V2
  - AWS::ApiGatewayV2::Api
  - AWS::ApiGatewayV2::ApiGatewayManagedOverrides
  - AWS::ApiGatewayV2::ApiMapping
  - AWS::ApiGatewayV2::Authorizer
  - AWS::ApiGatewayV2::Deployment
  - AWS::ApiGatewayV2::DomainName
  - AWS::ApiGatewayV2::Integration
  - AWS::ApiGatewayV2::IntegrationResponse
  - AWS::ApiGatewayV2::Model
  - AWS::ApiGatewayV2::Route
  - AWS::ApiGatewayV2::RouteResponse
  - AWS::ApiGatewayV2::Stage
  - AWS::ApiGatewayV2::VpcLink
- AWS AppSync
  - AWS::AppSync::ApiCache
  - AWS::AppSync::ApiKey

- AWS::AppSync::DataSource
- AWS::AppSync::FunctionConfiguration
- AWS::AppSync::GraphQLApi
- AWS::AppSync::GraphQLSchema
- AWS::AppSync::Resolver

- Amazon Athena
  - AWS::Athena::NamedQuery
  - AWS::Athena::WorkGroup
- AWS Backup
  - AWS::Backup::BackupVault
- Amazon CloudFront
  - AWS::CloudFront::Distribution
  - AWS::CloudFront::CloudFrontOriginAccessIdentity
  - AWS::CloudFront::StreamingDistribution
- Amazon CloudWatch
  - AWS::CloudWatch::Alarm
  - AWS::CloudWatch::AnomalyDetector
  - AWS::CloudWatch::CompositeAlarm
  - AWS::CloudWatch::Dashboard
  - AWS::CloudWatch::InsightRule
- Amazon CloudWatch Logs
  - AWS::Logs::LogGroup
  - AWS::Logs::LogStream
  - AWS::Logs::MetricFilter
  - AWS::Logs::SubscriptionFilter
- Amazon Cognito
  - AWS::Cognito::IdentityPool
  - AWS::Cognito::IdentityPoolRoleAttachment
  - AWS::Cognito::UserPool

- AWS::Cognito::UserPoolClient

- AWS::Cognito::UserPoolDomain
- AWS::Cognito::UserPoolGroup
- AWS::Cognito::UserPoolIdentityProvider
- AWS::Cognito::UserPoolResourceServer
- AWS::Cognito::UserPoolRiskConfigurationAttachment
- AWS::Cognito::UserPoolUICustomizationAttachment
- AWS::Cognito::UserPoolUser
- AWS::Cognito::UserPoolUserToGroupAttachment

- Amazon DocumentDB
  - AWS::DocDB::DBCluster
  - AWS::DocDB::DBClusterParameterGroup
  - AWS::DocDB::DBInstance
  - AWS::DocDB::DBSubnetGroup
- Amazon DynamoDB
  - AWS::DynamoDB::Table
- Amazon EC2
  - AWS::EC2::Volume
  - AWS::EC2::VolumeAttachment
  - AWS::EC2::Instance
  - AWS::EC2::EIP
  - AWS::EC2::EIPAssociation
  - AWS::EC2::NetworkInterface
  - AWS::EC2::NetworkInterfaceAttachment
  - AWS::EC2::SecurityGroup
  - AWS::EC2::SecurityGroupIngress
  - AWS::EC2::SecurityGroupEgress
  - AWS::EC2::LaunchTemplate
- AWS Batch
  - AWS::Batch::ComputeEnvironment
  - AWS::Batch::JobDefinition

- AWS::Batch::JobQueue
- Amazon Elastic Container Registry (ECR)
  - AWS::ECR::Repository
- Amazon Elastic Container Service (ECS) (Fargate)
  - AWS::ECS::CapacityProvider
  - AWS::ECS::Cluster
  - AWS::ECS::PrimaryTaskSet
  - AWS::ECS::Service
  - AWS::ECS::TaskDefinition
  - AWS::ECS::TaskSet
- Amazon Elastic File System (EFS)
  - AWS::EFS::FileSystem
  - AWS::EFS::MountTarget
- Amazon ElastiCache
  - AWS::ElastiCache::CacheCluster
  - AWS::ElastiCache::ParameterGroup
  - AWS::ElastiCache::ReplicationGroup
  - AWS::ElastiCache::SecurityGroup
  - AWS::ElastiCache::SecurityGroupIngress
  - AWS::ElastiCache::SubnetGroup
- Amazon EventBridge
  - AWS::Events::EventBus
  - AWS::Events::EventBusPolicy
  - AWS::Events::Rule
- Amazon FSx
  - AWS::FSx::FileSystem
- Amazon Inspector
  - AWS::Inspector::AssessmentTarget
  - AWS::Inspector::AssessmentTemplate

  - AWS::Inspector::ResourceGroup

- Amazon Kinesis Data Analytics
  - AWS::KinesisAnalytics::Application
  - AWS::KinesisAnalytics::ApplicationOutput
  - AWS::KinesisAnalytics::ApplicationReferenceDataSource
- Amazon Kinesis Data Firehose
  - AWS::KinesisFirehose::DeliveryStream
- Amazon Kinesis Data Streams
  - AWS::Kinesis::Stream
  - AWS::Kinesis::StreamConsumer
- Amazon MQ
  - AWS::AmazonMQ::Broker
  - AWS::AmazonMQ::Configuration
  - AWS::AmazonMQ::ConfigurationAssociation
- Amazon OpenSearch
  - AWS::OpenSearchService::Domain
- Amazon Relational Database Service (RDS)
  - AWS::RDS::DBCluster
  - AWS::RDS::DBClusterParameterGroup
  - AWS::RDS::DBInstance
  - AWS::RDS::DBParameterGroup
  - AWS::RDS::DBSubnetGroup
  - AWS::RDS::EventSubscription
  - AWS::RDS::OptionGroup
- Amazon Route 53
  - AWS::Route53::HealthCheck
  - AWS::Route53::HostedZone
  - AWS::Route53::RecordSet
  - AWS::Route53::RecordSetGroup
  - AWS::Route53Resolver::ResolverRule

- AWS::Route53Resolver::ResolverRuleAssociation

- Amazon S3
  - AWS::S3::Bucket
- Amazon Sagemaker
  - AWS::SageMaker::CodeRepository
  - AWS::SageMaker::Endpoint
  - AWS::SageMaker::EndpointConfig
  - AWS::SageMaker::Model
  - AWS::SageMaker::NotebookInstance
  - AWS::SageMaker::NotebookInstanceLifecycleConfig
  - AWS::SageMaker::Workteam
- Amazon Simple Email Service (SES)
  - AWS::SES::ConfigurationSet
  - AWS::SES::ConfigurationSetEventDestination
  - AWS::SES::ReceiptFilter
  - AWS::SES::ReceiptRule
  - AWS::SES::ReceiptRuleSet
  - AWS::SES::Template
- Amazon SimpleDB
  - AWS::SDB::Domain
- Amazon SNS
  - AWS::SNS::Subscription
  - AWS::SNS::Topic
- Amazon SQS
  - AWS::SQS::Queue
- Amazon WorkSpaces
  - AWS::WorkSpaces::Workspace
- Application AutoScaling
  - AWS::ApplicationAutoScaling::ScalableTarget
  - AWS::ApplicationAutoScaling::ScalingPolicy

- Amazon EC2 AutoScaling

- AWS::AutoScaling::AutoScalingGroup
- AWS::AutoScaling::LaunchConfiguration
- AWS::AutoScaling::LifecycleHook
- AWS::AutoScaling::ScalingPolicy
- AWS::AutoScaling::ScheduledAction

- AWS Certificate Manager
  - AWS::CertificateManager::Certificate
- AWS CloudFormation
  - AWS::CloudFormation::CustomResource
  - AWS::CloudFormation::Designer
  - AWS::CloudFormation::WaitCondition
  - AWS::CloudFormation::WaitConditionHandle
- AWS CodeBuild
  - AWS::CodeBuild::Project
  - AWS::CodeBuild::ReportGroup
  - AWS::CodeBuild::SourceCredential
- AWS CodeCommit
  - AWS::CodeCommit::Repository
- AWS CodeDeploy
  - AWS::CodeDeploy::Application
  - AWS::CodeDeploy::DeploymentConfig
  - AWS::CodeDeploy::DeploymentGroup
- AWS CodePipeline
  - AWS::CodePipeline::CustomActionType
  - AWS::CodePipeline::Pipeline
  - AWS::CodePipeline::Webhook
- AWS Database Migration Service (DMS)
  - AWS::DMS::Certificate
  - AWS::DMS::Endpoint

- AWS::DMS::EventSubscription

- AWS::DMS::ReplicationInstance
- AWS::DMS::ReplicationSubnetGroup
- AWS::DMS::ReplicationTask

The MongoDbSettings property in AWS::DMS::Endpoint resource is not allowed.

The following properties are only allowed if they are resolved by AWS Secrets Manager: CertificatePem and CertificateWallet properties in the AWS::DMS::Certificate resource, and the Password property in the AWS::DMS::Endpoint resource.

- AWS Elastic Load Balancing - Application Load Balancer / Network Load Balancer
  - AWS::ElasticLoadBalancingV2::Listener
  - AWS::ElasticLoadBalancingV2::ListenerCertificate
  - AWS::ElasticLoadBalancingV2::ListenerRule
  - AWS::ElasticLoadBalancingV2::LoadBalancer
  - AWS::ElasticLoadBalancingV2::TargetGroup
- AWS Elastic Load Balancing - Classic Load Balancer
  - AWS::ElasticLoadBalancing::LoadBalancer
- AWS Elemental MediaConvert
  - AWS::MediaConvert::JobTemplate
  - AWS::MediaConvert::Preset
  - AWS::MediaConvert::Queue
- AWS Elemental MediaStore
  - AWS::MediaStore::Container
- AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM)
  - AWS::IAM::Role
- AWS Managed Streaming for Apache Kafka (MSK)
  - AWS::MSK::Cluster
- AWS Glue
  - AWS::Glue::Classifier
  - AWS::Glue::Connection
  - AWS::Glue::Crawler
  - AWS::Glue::Database

- AWS::Glue::DataCatalogEncryptionSettings
- AWS::Glue::DevEndpoint
- AWS::Glue::Job
- AWS::Glue::MLTransform
- AWS::Glue::Partition
- AWS::Glue::SecurityConfiguration
- AWS::Glue::Table
- AWS::Glue::Trigger
- AWS::Glue::Workflow

- AWS Key Management Service (KMS)
  - AWS::KMS::Key
  - AWS::KMS::Alias
- AWS Lake Formation
  - AWS::LakeFormation::DataLakeSettings
  - AWS::LakeFormation::Permissions
  - AWS::LakeFormation::Resource
- AWS Lambda
  - AWS::Lambda::Alias
  - AWS::Lambda::EventInvokeConfig
  - AWS::Lambda::EventSourceMapping
  - AWS::Lambda::Function
  - AWS::Lambda::LayerVersion
  - AWS::Lambda::LayerVersionPermission
  - AWS::Lambda::Permission
  - AWS::Lambda::Version
- Amazon Redshift
  - AWS::Redshift::Cluster
  - AWS::Redshift::ClusterParameterGroup
  - AWS::Redshift::ClusterSubnetGroup

- AWS Secrets Manager

  - AWS::SecretsManager::ResourcePolicy
  - AWS::SecretsManager::RotationSchedule
  - AWS::SecretsManager::Secret
  - AWS::SecretsManager::SecretTargetAttachment
- AWS Security Hub
  - AWS::SecurityHub::Hub
- AWS Step Functions
  - AWS::StepFunctions::Activity
  - AWS::StepFunctions::StateMachine
- AWS Systems Manager (SSM)
  - AWS::SSM::Parameter
- Amazon CloudWatch Synthetics
  - AWS::Synthetics::Canary
- AWS Transfer Family
  - AWS::Transfer::Server
  - AWS::Transfer::User
- AWS WAF
  - AWS::WAF::ByteMatchSet
  - AWS::WAF::IPSet
  - AWS::WAF::Rule
  - AWS::WAF::SizeConstraintSet
  - AWS::WAF::SqlInjectionMatchSet
  - AWS::WAF::WebACL
  - AWS::WAF::XssMatchSet
- AWS WAF Regional
  - AWS::WAFRegional::ByteMatchSet
  - AWS::WAFRegional::GeoMatchSet
  - AWS::WAFRegional::IPSet
  - AWS::WAFRegional::RateBasedRule

  - AWS::WAFRegional::RegexPatternSet

- AWS::WAFRegional::Rule
- AWS::WAFRegional::SizeConstraintSet
- AWS::WAFRegional::SqlInjectionMatchSet
- AWS::WAFRegional::WebACL
- AWS::WAFRegional::WebACLAssociation
- AWS::WAFRegional::XssMatchSet

- AWS WAFv2
  - AWS::WAFv2::IPSet
  - AWS::WAFv2::RegexPatternSet
  - AWS::WAFv2::RuleGroup
  - AWS::WAFv2::WebACL
  - AWS::WAFv2::WebACLAssociation

CloudFormation Ingest: Examples

Find here some detailed examples of how to use the **Create stack with CloudFormation template** change type.

To download a set of sample CloudFormation templates per AWS Region, see Sample Templates.

For reference information on CloudFormation resources, see AWS Resource and Property Types Reference. However, AMS supports a smaller set of resources, which are described in AMS CloudFormation ingest.

> **Note**
>
> AMS advises you to gather all IAM or other policy-related resources and submit them in a single Management | Other | Other | Create change type (ct-1e1xtak34nx76). For example, combine all needed IAM roles, IAM instance profiles, IAM policy updates for existing IAM roles, S3 bucket policies, SNS/SQS policies, and so forth, and then submit a ct-1e1xtak34nx76 RFC so that these pre-existing resources can be referenced inside the future CFN Ingest templates.

Topics

- CloudFormation Ingest examples: Defining resources
- CloudFormation Ingest examples: 3-tier Web application

CloudFormation Ingest examples: Defining resources

When using AMS CloudFormation ingest, you customize a CloudFormation template and submit it to AMS in an RFC with the CloudFormation ingest change type (ct-36cn2avfrrj9v). To create a CloudFormation template that can be reused multiple times, you add the stack configuration parameters to the CloudFormation ingest change type execution input rather than hard coding them in the CloudFormation template. The biggest benefit is that you can reuse the template.

The AMS CloudFormation ingest change type input schema enables you to choose up to sixty parameters in a CloudFormation template and provide custom values.

This example shows how to define a resource property, which can be used in a variety of CloudFormation templates, as a parameter in the AMS CloudFormation ingest CT. The examples in this section specifically show SNS topic usage.

Topics

- Example 1: Hard code the CloudFormation SNSTopic resource TopicName property
- Example 2: Use an SNSTopic resource to reference a parameter in the AMS change type
- Example 3: Create an SNS topic by submitting a JSON execution parameters file with the AMS ingest change type
- Example 4: Submit a new change type that references the same CloudFormation template
- Example 5: Use the default parameter values in the CloudFormation template

Example 1: Hard code the CloudFormation SNSTopic resource `TopicName` property

In this example, you hard code the CloudFormation SNSTopic resource `TopicName` property in the CloudFormation template. Note that the `Parameters` section is empty.

To have a CloudFormation template that allows you to change the value for the SNSTopic name for a new stack without having to create a new CloudFormation template, you can use the AMS `Parameters` section of the CloudFormation ingest change type to make that configuration. By doing this, you use the same CloudFormation template later to create a new stack with a different `SNSTopic` name.

```
{
  "AWSTemplateFormatVersion" : "2010-09-09",
  "Description" : "My SNS Topic",
  "Parameters" : {
  },
  "Resources" : {
    "SNSTopic" : {
      "Type" : "AWS::SNS::Topic",
      "Properties" : {
        "TopicName" : "MyTopicName"
      }
    }
  }
}
```

Example 2: Use an SNSTopic resource to reference a parameter in the AMS change type

In this example, you use an `SNSTopic` resource `TopicName` property defined in the CloudFormation template to reference a `Parameter` in the AMS change type.

```
{
  "AWSTemplateFormatVersion" : "2010-09-09",
  "Description" : "My SNS Topic",
  "Parameters" : {
    "TopicName" : {
      "Type" : "String",
      "Description" : "Topic ID",
      "Default" : "MyTopicName"
    }
  },
  "Resources" : {
    "SNSTopic" : {
      "Type" : "AWS::SNS::Topic",
      "Properties" : {
        "TopicName" : { "Ref" : "TopicName"}
      }
    }
  }
}
```

Example 3: Create an SNS topic by submitting a JSON execution parameters file with the AMS ingest change type

In this example, you submit a JSON execution parameters file with the AMS ingest CT that creates the SNS topic `TopicName`. The SNS topic must be defined in the CloudFormation template in the modifiable way shown in this example.

```
{
  "Name": "cfn-ingest",
  "Description": "CFNIngest Web Application Stack",
  "CloudFormationTemplateS3Endpoint": "$S3_PRESIGNED_URL",
  "VpcId": "VPC_ID",
  "Tags": [
    {"Key": "Enviroment Type", "Value": "Dev"}
  ],
  "Parameters": [
    {"Name": "TopicName", "Value": "MyTopic1"}
  ],
  "TimeoutInMinutes": 60
}
```

Example 4: Submit a new change type that references the same CloudFormation template

This JSON example changes the SNS `TopicName` value without making a change to the CloudFormation template. Instead, you submit a new Deployment | Ingestion | Stack from CloudFormation Template | Create change type that references the same CFN template.

```
{
  "Name": "cfn-ingest",
  "Description": "CFNIngest Web Application Stack",
  "CloudFormationTemplateS3Endpoint": "$S3_PRESIGNED_URL",
  "VpcId": "VPC_ID",
  "Tags": [
    {"Key": "Enviroment Type", "Value": "Dev"}
  ],
  "Parameters": [
    {"Name": "TopicName", "Value": "MyTopic2"}
  ],
  "TimeoutInMinutes": 60
}
```

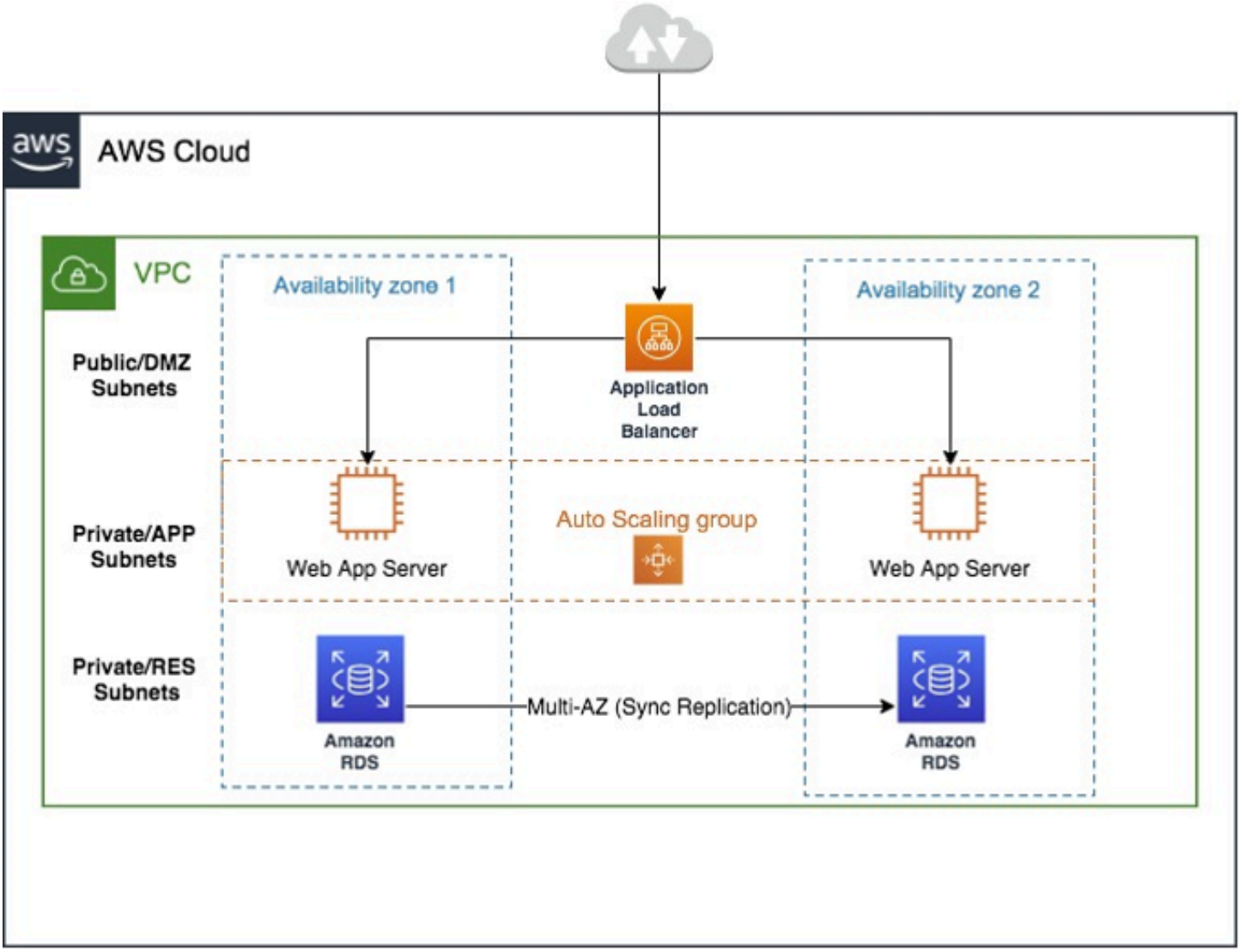
Example 5: Use the default parameter values in the CloudFormation template

In this example, the SNS `TopicName` = 'MyTopicName' is created because no `TopicName` value was provided in the `Parameters` execution parameter. If you don't provide `Parameters` definitions, the default parameter values in the CloudFormation template are used.

```
{
  "Name": "cfn-ingest",
  "Description": "CFNIngest Web Application Stack",
  "CloudFormationTemplateS3Endpoint": "$S3_PRESIGNED_URL",
  "VpcId": "VPC_ID",
  "Tags": [
    {"Key": "Enviroment Type", "Value": "Dev"}
  ],
  "TimeoutInMinutes": 60
}
```

CloudFormation Ingest examples: 3-tier Web application

Ingest a CloudFormation template for a standard 3-Tier Web Application.



This includes an Application Load Balancer, Application Load Balancer target group, Auto Scaling group, Auto Scaling group launch template, Amazon Relational Database Service (RDS for SQL Server) with a MySQL database, AWS SSM Parameter store, and AWS Secrets Manager. Allow 30-60 minutes to walk through this example.

Prerequisites

- Create a secret containing a username and password with corresponding values using the AWS Secrets Manager. You can refer to this sample JSON template (zip file) that contains the secret name `ams-shared/myapp/dev/dbsecrets`, and replace it with your secret name. For information about using AWS Secrets Manager with AMS, see Using AWS Secrets Manager with AMS resources.

- Set up required parameters in the AWS SSM Parameter Store (PS). In this example, the `VPCId` and `Subnet-Id` of the Private and Public subnets are stored in the SSM PS in paths like `/app/DemoApp/PublicSubnet1a`, `PublicSubnet1c`, `PrivateSubnet1a`, `PrivateSubnet1c` and `VPCCidr`. Update the paths and parameter names and values for your needs.
- Create an IAM Amazon EC2 instance role with read permissions to the AWS Secrets Manager and SSM Parameter Store paths (the IAM role created and used in these examples is `customer-ec2_secrets_manager_instance_profile`). If you create IAM-standard policies like instance profile role, the role name must start with `customer-`. To create a new IAM role, (you can name it `customer-ec2_secrets_manager_instance_profile`, or something else) use the AMS change type Management | Applications | IAM instance profile | Create (ct-0ixp4ch2tiu04) CT, and attach the required policies. You can review the AMS IAM standard policies, `customer_secrets_manager_policy` and `customer_systemsmanager_parameterstore_policy`, in the AWS IAM console to be used as-is or as a reference.

Ingest a CloudFormation template for a standard 3-Tier Web application

1. Upload the attached sample CloudFormation JSON template as a zip file, 3-tier-cfn-ingest.zip to an S3 bucket and generate a signed S3 URL to use in the CFN Ingest RFC. For more information, see presign. The CFN template can also be copy/pasted into the CFN Ingest RFC when you submit the RFC through the AMS console.
2. Create a CloudFormation Ingest RFC (Deployment | Ingestion | Stack from CloudFormation template | Create (ct-36cn2avfrrj9v)), either via the AMS console or the AMS CLI. The CloudFormation ingest automation process validates the CloudFormation template to ensure that the template has valid AMS-supported resources, and adheres to security standards.

   - Using the console - For the change type, select **Deployment** -> **Ingestion** -> **Stack from CloudFormation Template** -> **Create**, and then add the following parameters as an example (note that the default for **MultiAZDatabase** is false):

```
CloudFormationTemplateS3Endpoint: "https://s3-ap-
southeast-2.amazonaws.com/amzn-s3-demo-bucket/3-tier-cfn-ingest.json?
AWSAccessKeyId=#{S3_ACCESS_KEY_ID}&Expires=#{EXPIRE_DATE}&Signature=#{SIGNATURE}"
VpcId: "VPC_ID"
TimeoutInMinutes: 120
IAMEC2InstanceProfile: "customer_ec2_secrets_manager_instance_profile"
MultiAZDatabase: "true"
```

```
WebServerCapacity: "2"
```

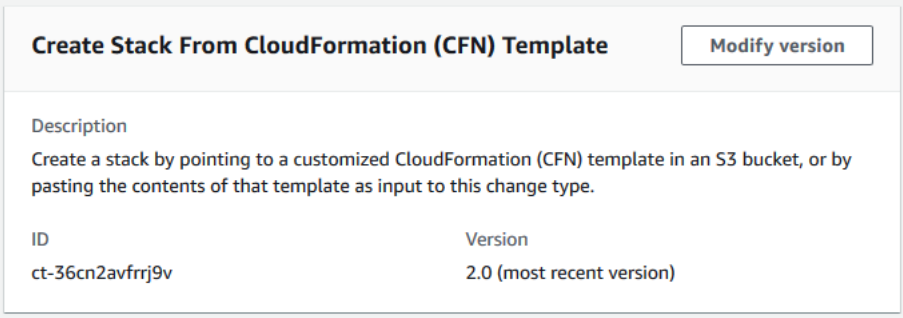
- Using the AWS CLI - For details about creating RFCs using the AWS CLI, see Creating RFCs. For example, run the following command:

```
aws --profile=saml amscm create-rfc  --change-type-id ct-36cn2avfrrj9v
 --change-type-version "2.0" --title "TEST_CFN_INGEST" --execution-
parameters "{\"CloudFormationTemplateS3Endpoint\":\"https://s3-
ap-southeast-2.amazonaws.com/my-bucket/3-tier-cfn-ingest.json?
AWSAccessKeyId=#{S3_ACCESS_KEY_ID}&Expires=#{EXPIRE_DATE}&Signature=#{SIGNATURE}\",
\"TimeoutInMinutes\":120,\"Description\":\"TEST\",\"VpcId"\":\"VPC_ID\",
\"Name\":\"MY_TEST\",\"Tags\":[{\"Key\":\"env\",\"Value\":\"test\"}],
\"Parameters\":[{\"Name\":\"IAMEC2InstanceProfile\",\"Value\":
\"customer_ec2_secrets_manager_instance_profile\"},{\"Name\":\"MultiAZDatabase\",
\"Value\":\"true\"},{\"Name\":\"VpcId\",\"Value\":\"VPC_ID\"},{\"Name\":
\"WebServerCapacity\",\"Value\":\"2\"}]}" --endpoint-url https://amscm.us-
east-1.amazonaws.com/operational/ --no-verify-ssl
```

Find the Application Load Balancer URL in the CloudFormation RFC execution output to access the website. For information about accessing resources, see Accessing instances.

Create CloudFormation ingest stack

Creating a CloudFormation ingest stack using the console



To create a CloudFormation ingest stack using the console

1. Navigate to the **Create RFC** page: In the left navigation pane of the AMS console click **RFCs** to open the RFCs list page, and then click **Create RFC**.
2. Choose a popular change type (CT) in the default **Browse change types** view, or select a CT in the **Choose by category** view.

- **Browse by change type**: You can click on a popular CT in the **Quick create** area to immediately open the **Run RFC** page. Note that you cannot choose an older CT version with quick create.

  To sort CTs, use the **All change types** area in either the **Card** or **Table** view. In either view, select a CT and then click **Create RFC** to open the **Run RFC** page. If applicable, a **Create with older version** option appears next to the **Create RFC** button.
- **Choose by category**: Select a category, subcategory, item, and operation and the CT details box opens with an option to **Create with older version** if applicable. Click **Create RFC** to open the **Run RFC** page.

3. On the **Run RFC** page, open the CT name area to see the CT details box. A **Subject** is required (this is filled in for you if you choose your CT in the **Browse change types** view). Open the **Additional configuration** area to add information about the RFC.

   In the **Execution configuration** area, use available drop-down lists or enter values for the required parameters. To configure optional execution parameters, open the **Additional configuration** area.
4. When finished, click **Run**. If there are no errors, the **RFC successfully created** page displays with the submitted RFC details, and the initial **Run output**.
5. Open the **Run parameters** area to see the configurations you submitted. Refresh the page to update the RFC execution status. Optionally, cancel the RFC or create a copy of it with the options at the top of the page.

Creating a CloudFormation ingest stack using the CLI

To create a CloudFormation ingest stack using the CLI

1. Use either the Inline Create (you issue a `create-rfc` command with all RFC and execution parameters included), or Template Create (you create two JSON files, one for the RFC parameters and one for the execution parameters) and issue the `create-rfc` command with the two files as input. Both methods are described here.
2. Submit the RFC: `aws amscm submit-rfc --rfc-id` *`ID`* command with the returned RFC ID.

   Monitor the RFC: `aws amscm get-rfc --rfc-id` *`ID`* command.

To check the change type version, use this command:

```
aws amscm list-change-type-version-summaries --filter
 Attribute=ChangeTypeId,Value=CT_ID
```

Note

You can use any `CreateRfc` parameters with any RFC whether or not they are part of the schema for the change type. For example, to get notifications when the RFC status changes, add this line, `--notification "{\"Email\": {\"EmailRecipients\" : [\"email@example.com\"]}}"` to the RFC parameters part of the request (not the execution parameters). For a list of all CreateRfc parameters, see the AMS Change Management API Reference.

1. Prepare the CloudFormation template that you will use to create the stack, and upload it to your S3 bucket. For important details, see AWS CloudFormation Ingest Guidelines, Best Practices, and Limitations.
2. Create and submit the RFC to AMS:

   - Create and save the execution parameters JSON file, include the CloudFormation template parameters that you want. The following example names it CreateCfnParams.json.

     Example Web application stack CreateCfnParams.json file:

```
{
  "Name": "cfn-ingest",
  "Description": "CFNIngest Web Application Stack",
  "VpcId": "VPC_ID",
  "CloudFormationTemplateS3Endpoint": "$S3_URL",
  "TimeoutInMinutes": 120,
  "Tags": [
   {
    "Key":   "Enviroment Type"
    "Value": "Dev",
   },
   {
    "Key":   "Application"
    "Value": "PCS",
   }
  ],
  "Parameters": [
```

```
    {
     "Name": "Parameter-for-S3Bucket-Name",
     "Value":  "BUCKET-NAME"
    },
    {
     "Name": "Parameter-for-Image-Id",
     "Value":  "AMI-ID"
    }
   ],
}
```

Example SNS topic CreateCfnParams.json file:

```
{
  "Name": "cfn-ingest",
  "Description": "CFNIngest Web Application Stack",
  "CloudFormationTemplateS3Endpoint": "$S3_URL",
  "Tags": [
    {"Key": "Enviroment Type", "Value": "Dev"}
  ],
  "Parameters": [
    {"Name": "TopicName", "Value": "MyTopic1"}
  ]
}
```

3. Create and save the RFC parameters JSON file with the following content. The following example names it CreateCfnRfc.json file:

```
{
   "ChangeTypeId": "ct-36cn2avfrrj9v",
   "ChangeTypeVersion": "2.0",
   "Title": "cfn-ingest"
}
```

4. Create the RFC, specifying the CreateCfnRfc file and the CreateCfnParams file:

```
aws amscm create-rfc --cli-input-json file://CreateCfnRfc.json  --execution-
parameters file://CreateCfnParams.json
```

You receive the ID of the new RFC in the response and can use it to submit and monitor the RFC. Until you submit it, the RFC remains in the editing state and does not start.

Tips

Note

This change type is at version 2.0 and is automated (not manually executed). This allows the CT execution to go more quickly, and, a new parameter, **CloudFormationTemplate**, allows you to paste into the RFC a custom CloudFormation template. Additionally, In this version, we do not attach the default AMS security groups if the you specify your own security groups. If you do not specify your own security groups in the request, AMS will attach the AMS default security groups. In CFN Ingest v1.0, we always appended the AMS default security groups whether or not you provided your own security groups.
AMS has enabled 17 AMS Self-Provisioned services for use in this change type. For information about supported resources, see CloudFormation Ingest Stack: Supported Resources.

Note

Version 2.0 accepts an S3 endpoint that is not a presigned URL.
If you use the previous version of this CT, the **CloudFormationTemplateS3Endpoint** parameter value must be a presigned URL.
Example command for generating a presigned S3 bucket URL (Mac/Linux):

```
export S3_PRESIGNED_URL=$(aws s3 presign DASHDASHexpires-in 86400
 s3://BUCKET_NAME/CFN_TEMPLATE.json)
```

Example command for generating a presigned S3 bucket URL (Windows):

```
for /f %i in ('aws s3 presign DASHDASHexpires-in 86400
 s3://BUCKET_NAME/CFN_TEMPLATE.json') do set S3_PRESIGNED_URL=%i
```

See also Creating Pre-Signed URLs for Amazon S3 Buckets.

> **Note**
>
> If the S3 bucket exists in an AMS account, you must use your AMS credentials for this command. For example, you may need to append `--profile saml` after obtaining your AMS AWS Security Token Service (AWS STS) credentials.

Related change types: Approve a CloudFormation ingest stack changeset, Update CloudFormation ingest stack

To learn more about AWS CloudFormation, see AWS CloudFormation. To see CloudFormation templates, open the AWS CloudFormation Template Reference.

Validating a CloudFormation ingest

The template is validated to ensure that it can be created in an AMS account. If it passes validation, it's updated to include any resources or configurations required for it to conform with AMS. This includes adding resources such as Amazon CloudWatch alarms in order to allow AMS Operations to monitor the stack.

The RFC is rejected if any of the following are true:

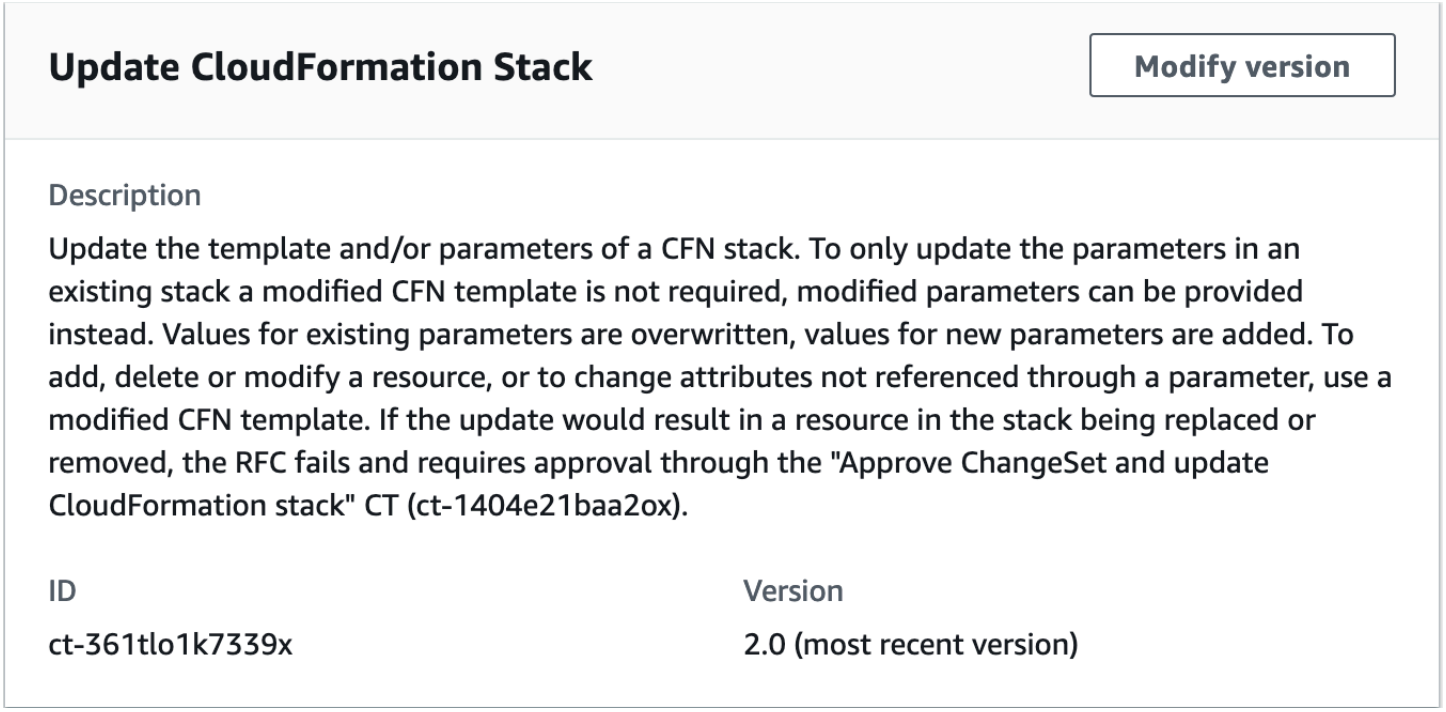
- RFC JSON Syntax is incorrect or does not follow the given format.
- The provided S3 bucket presigned URL is not valid.
- The template is not valid CloudFormation syntax.
- The template does not have defaults set for all parameter values.
- The template fails AMS validation. For AMS validation steps, see the information later in this topic.

The RFC fails if the CloudFormation stack fails to create due to a resource creation issue.

To learn more about CFN validation and validator, see Template Validation and CloudFormation ingest stack: CFN validator examples.

Update CloudFormation ingest stack

Updating a CloudFormation ingest stack using the console



To update a CloudFormation Ingest Stack using the console

1. Navigate to the **Create RFC** page: In the left navigation pane of the AMS console click **RFCs** to open the RFCs list page, and then click **Create RFC**.
2. Choose a popular change type (CT) in the default **Browse change types** view, or select a CT in the **Choose by category** view.
   - **Browse by change type**: You can click on a popular CT in the **Quick create** area to immediately open the **Run RFC** page. Note that you cannot choose an older CT version with quick create.

     To sort CTs, use the **All change types** area in either the **Card** or **Table** view. In either view, select a CT and then click **Create RFC** to open the **Run RFC** page. If applicable, a **Create with older version** option appears next to the **Create RFC** button.
   - **Choose by category**: Select a category, subcategory, item, and operation and the CT details box opens with an option to **Create with older version** if applicable. Click **Create RFC** to open the **Run RFC** page.

3. On the **Run RFC** page, open the CT name area to see the CT details box. A **Subject** is required (this is filled in for you if you choose your CT in the **Browse change types** view). Open the **Additional configuration** area to add information about the RFC.

   In the **Execution configuration** area, use available drop-down lists or enter values for the required parameters. To configure optional execution parameters, open the **Additional configuration** area.

4. When finished, click **Run**. If there are no errors, the **RFC successfully created** page displays with the submitted RFC details, and the initial **Run output**.

5. Open the **Run parameters** area to see the configurations you submitted. Refresh the page to update the RFC execution status. Optionally, cancel the RFC or create a copy of it with the options at the top of the page.

Updating a CloudFormation ingest stack using the CLI

To update a CloudFormation ingest stack using the CLI

1. Use either the Inline Create (you issue a `create-rfc` command with all RFC and execution parameters included), or Template Create (you create two JSON files, one for the RFC parameters and one for the execution parameters) and issue the `create-rfc` command with the two files as input. Both methods are described here.
2. Submit the RFC: `aws amscm submit-rfc --rfc-id` *`ID`* command with the returned RFC ID.

   Monitor the RFC: `aws amscm get-rfc --rfc-id` *`ID`* command.

To check the change type version, use this command:

```
aws amscm list-change-type-version-summaries --filter
 Attribute=ChangeTypeId,Value=CT_ID
```

> **Note**
>
> You can use any `CreateRfc` parameters with any RFC whether or not they are part of the schema for the change type. For example, to get notifications when the RFC status changes, add this line, `--notification "{\"Email\": {\"EmailRecipients \" : [\"email@example.com\"]}}"` to the RFC parameters part of the request (not

the execution parameters). For a list of all CreateRfc parameters, see the AMS Change Management API Reference.

1. Prepare the CloudFormation template that you want to use to update the stack, and upload it to your S3 bucket. For important details, see AWS CloudFormation Ingest Guidelines, Best Practices, and Limitations.
2. Create and submit the RFC to AMS:

   - Create and save the execution parameters JSON file, include the CloudFormation template parameters that you want. This example names it UpdateCfnParams.json.

     Example UpdateCfnParams.json file with inline parameter updates:

```
{
  "StackId": "stack-yjjoo9aicjyqw4ro2",
  "VpcId": "VPC_ID",
  "CloudFormationTemplate": "{\"AWSTemplateFormatVersion\":\"2010-09-09\",
\"Description\":\"Create a SNS topic\",\"Parameters\":{\"TopicName\":{\"Type
\":\"String\"},\"DisplayName\":{\"Type\":\"String\"}},\"Resources\":{\"SnsTopic
\":{\"Type\":\"AWS::SNS::Topic\",\"Properties\":{\"TopicName\":{\"Ref\":
\"TopicName\"},\"DisplayName\":{\"Ref\":\"DisplayName\"}}}}}",
  "TemplateParameters": [
    {
      "Key": "TopicName",
      "Value": "TopicNameCLI"
    },
    {
      "Key": "DisplayName",
      "Value": "DisplayNameCLI"
    }
  ],
  "TimeoutInMinutes": 1440
}
```

     Example UpdateCfnParams.json file with S3 bucket endpoint containing an updated CloudFormation template:

```
{
  "StackId": "stack-yjjoo9aicjyqw4ro2",
  "VpcId": "VPC_ID",
```

```
  "CloudFormationTemplateS3Endpoint": "s3_url",
  "TemplateParameters": [
    {
      "Key": "TopicName",
      "Value": "TopicNameCLI"
    },
    {
      "Key": "DisplayName",
      "Value": "DisplayNameCLI"
    }
  ],
  "TimeoutInMinutes": 1080
}
```

3. Create and save the RFC parameters JSON file with the following content. This example names it UpdateCfnRfc.json file.

```
{
   "ChangeTypeId": "ct-361tlo1k7339x",
   "ChangeTypeVersion": "1.0",
   "Title": "cfn-ingest-template-update"
}
```

4. Create the RFC, specifying the UpdateCfnRfc file and the UpdateCfnParams file:

```
aws amscm create-rfc --cli-input-json file://UpdateCfnRfc.json  --execution-
parameters file://UpdateCfnParams.json
```

   You receive the ID of the new RFC in the response and can use it to submit and monitor the RFC. Until you submit it, the RFC remains in the editing state and does not start.

Tips

- This change type is now at version 2.0. Changes include removing the **AutoApproveUpdateForResources** parameter, which was used in version 1.0 of this CT, and adding two new parameters: **AutoApproveRiskyUpdates** and **BypassDriftCheck**.
- If the S3 bucket exists in an AMS account, you must use your AMS credentials for this command. For example, you may need to append `--profile saml` after obtaining your AMS AWS Security Token Service (AWS STS) credentials.

- All `Parameter` values for resources in the CloudFormation template must have a value, either through a default or a custom value through the parameters section of the CT. You can override the parameter value by structuring the CloudFormation template resources to reference a Parameters key. For examples that show how to do, see CloudFormation ingest stack: CFN validator examples.

  IMPORTANT: Missing parameters not supplied explicitly in the form, default to the currently set values on the existing stack or template.

- For a list of which self-provisioned services you can add using CloudFormation Ingest, see CloudFormation Ingest Stack: Supported Resources.

  To learn more about CloudFormation, see AWS CloudFormation.

Validating a CloudFormation ingest

The template is validated to ensure that it can be created in an AMS account. If it passes validation, it's updated to include any resources or configurations required for it to conform with AMS. This includes adding resources such as Amazon CloudWatch alarms in order to allow AMS Operations to monitor the stack.

The RFC is rejected if any of the following are true:

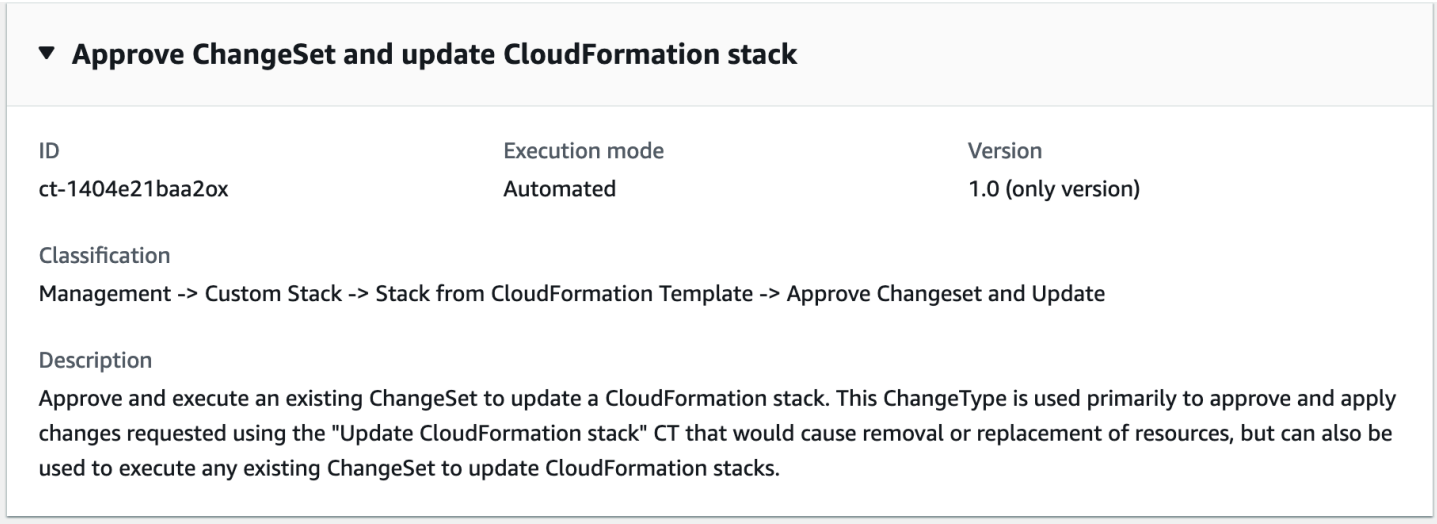
- RFC JSON Syntax is incorrect or does not follow the given format.
- The provided S3 bucket presigned URL is not valid.
- The template is not valid CloudFormation syntax.
- The template does not have defaults set for all parameter values.
- The template fails AMS validation. For AMS validation steps, see the information later in this topic.

The RFC fails if the CloudFormation stack fails to create due to a resource creation issue.

To learn more about CFN validation and validator, see Template Validation and CloudFormation ingest stack: CFN validator examples.

Approve a CloudFormation ingest stack changeset

Approving and updating a CloudFormation ingest stack using the console



To approve and update a CloudFormation ingest stack using the console

1. Navigate to the **Create RFC** page: In the left navigation pane of the AMS console click **RFCs** to open the RFCs list page, and then click **Create RFC**.
2. Choose a popular change type (CT) in the default **Browse change types** view, or select a CT in the **Choose by category** view.
   - **Browse by change type**: You can click on a popular CT in the **Quick create** area to immediately open the **Run RFC** page. Note that you cannot choose an older CT version with quick create.

     To sort CTs, use the **All change types** area in either the **Card** or **Table** view. In either view, select a CT and then click **Create RFC** to open the **Run RFC** page. If applicable, a **Create with older version** option appears next to the **Create RFC** button.
   - **Choose by category**: Select a category, subcategory, item, and operation and the CT details box opens with an option to **Create with older version** if applicable. Click **Create RFC** to open the **Run RFC** page.
3. On the **Run RFC** page, open the CT name area to see the CT details box. A **Subject** is required (this is filled in for you if you choose your CT in the **Browse change types** view). Open the **Additional configuration** area to add information about the RFC.

In the **Execution configuration** area, use available drop-down lists or enter values for the required parameters. To configure optional execution parameters, open the **Additional configuration** area.

4. When finished, click **Run**. If there are no errors, the **RFC successfully created** page displays with the submitted RFC details, and the initial **Run output**.
5. Open the **Run parameters** area to see the configurations you submitted. Refresh the page to update the RFC execution status. Optionally, cancel the RFC or create a copy of it with the options at the top of the page.

Approving and updating a CloudFormation ingest stack using the CLI

To approve and update a CloudFormation ingest stack using the CLI

1. Use either the Inline Create (you issue a `create-rfc` command with all RFC and execution parameters included), or Template Create (you create two JSON files, one for the RFC parameters and one for the execution parameters) and issue the `create-rfc` command with the two files as input. Both methods are described here.
2. Submit the RFC: `aws amscm submit-rfc --rfc-id` *`ID`* command with the returned RFC ID.

   Monitor the RFC: `aws amscm get-rfc --rfc-id` *`ID`* command.

To check the change type version, use this command:

```
aws amscm list-change-type-version-summaries --filter
 Attribute=ChangeTypeId,Value=CT_ID
```

> **Note**
>
> You can use any `CreateRfc` parameters with any RFC whether or not they are part of the schema for the change type. For example, to get notifications when the RFC status changes, add this line, `--notification "{\"Email\": {\"EmailRecipients\" : [\"email@example.com\"]}}"` to the RFC parameters part of the request (not the execution parameters). For a list of all CreateRfc parameters, see the AMS Change Management API Reference.

1. Output the execution parameters JSON schema for this change type to a file in your current folder. This example names it CreateAsgParams.json:

```
aws amscm create-rfc --change-type-id "ct-1404e21baa2ox" --change-
type-version "1.0" --title "Approve Update" --execution-parameters
 file://PATH_TO_EXECUTION_PARAMETERS --profile saml
```

2. Modify and save the schema as follows:

```
{
  "StackId": "STACK_ID",
  "VpcId": "VPC_ID",
  "ChangeSetName": "UPDATE-ef81e2bc-03f6-4b17-a3c7-feb700e78faa",
  "TimeoutInMinutes": 1080
}
```

Tips

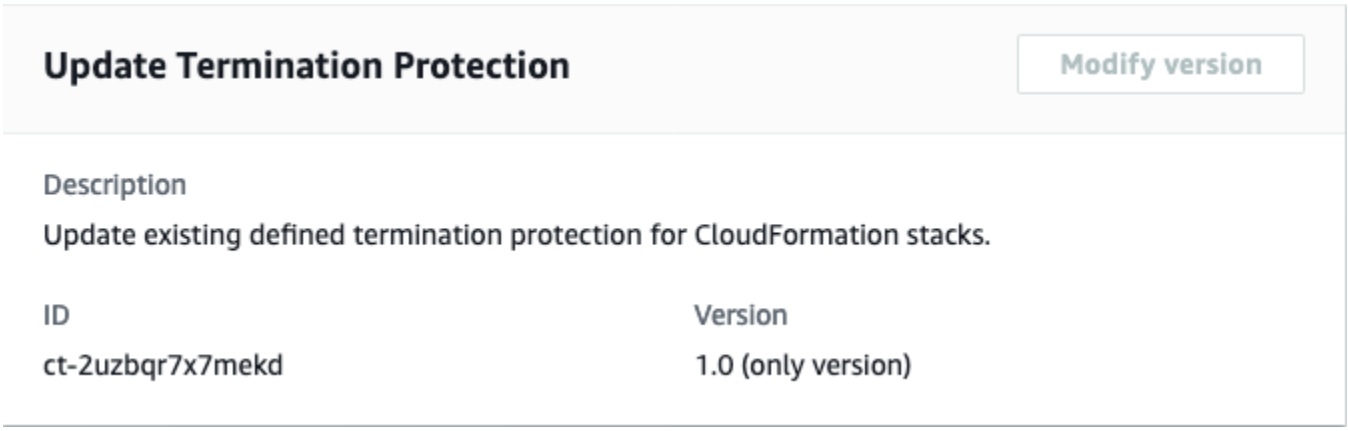
> **Note**
>
> If there are multiple resources in a stack, and you want to delete only a subset of the stack resources, use the CloudFormation Update CT; see CloudFormation Ingest Stack: Updating. You can also submit a Service request case and AMS engineers can help you craft the changeset, if needed.

To learn more about AWS CloudFormation, see AWS CloudFormation.

Update CloudFormation stacks termination protection

Updating an CloudFormation termination protection stack with the console

The following shows this change type in the AMS console.



How it works:

1. Navigate to the **Create RFC** page: In the left navigation pane of the AMS console click **RFCs** to open the RFCs list page, and then click **Create RFC**.
2. Choose a popular change type (CT) in the default **Browse change types** view, or select a CT in the **Choose by category** view.
   - **Browse by change type**: You can click on a popular CT in the **Quick create** area to immediately open the **Run RFC** page. Note that you cannot choose an older CT version with quick create.

     To sort CTs, use the **All change types** area in either the **Card** or **Table** view. In either view, select a CT and then click **Create RFC** to open the **Run RFC** page. If applicable, a **Create with older version** option appears next to the **Create RFC** button.
   - **Choose by category**: Select a category, subcategory, item, and operation and the CT details box opens with an option to **Create with older version** if applicable. Click **Create RFC** to open the **Run RFC** page.
3. On the **Run RFC** page, open the CT name area to see the CT details box. A **Subject** is required (this is filled in for you if you choose your CT in the **Browse change types** view). Open the **Additional configuration** area to add information about the RFC.

   In the **Execution configuration** area, use available drop-down lists or enter values for the required parameters. To configure optional execution parameters, open the **Additional configuration** area.
4. When finished, click **Run**. If there are no errors, the **RFC successfully created** page displays with the submitted RFC details, and the initial **Run output**.

5. Open the **Run parameters** area to see the configurations you submitted. Refresh the page to update the RFC execution status. Optionally, cancel the RFC or create a copy of it with the options at the top of the page.

Updating an CloudFormation stack termination protection with the CLI

How it works:

1. Use either the Inline Create (you issue a `create-rfc` command with all RFC and execution parameters included), or Template Create (you create two JSON files, one for the RFC parameters and one for the execution parameters) and issue the `create-rfc` command with the two files as input. Both methods are described here.
2. Submit the RFC: `aws amscm submit-rfc --rfc-id` *`ID`* command with the returned RFC ID.

   Monitor the RFC: `aws amscm get-rfc --rfc-id` *`ID`* command.

To check the change type version, use this command:

```
aws amscm list-change-type-version-summaries --filter
 Attribute=ChangeTypeId,Value=CT_ID
```

> **Note**
>
> You can use any `CreateRfc` parameters with any RFC whether or not they are part of the schema for the change type. For example, to get notifications when the RFC status changes, add this line, `--notification "{\"Email\": {\"EmailRecipients\" : [\"email@example.com\"]}}"` to the RFC parameters part of the request (not the execution parameters). For a list of all CreateRfc parameters, see the AMS Change Management API Reference.

Only specify the parameters you want to change. Absent parameters retain the existing values.

INLINE CREATE:

Issue the create RFC command with execution parameters provided inline (escape quotation marks when providing execution parameters inline), and then submit the returned RFC ID. For example, you can replace the contents with something like this:

```
aws amscm create-rfc \
--change-type-id "ct-2uzbqr7x7mekd" \
--change-type-version "1.0" \
--title "Enable termination protection on CFN stack" \
--execution-parameters "{\"DocumentName\":\"AWSManagedServices-
ManageResourceTerminationProtection\",\"Region\":\"us-east-1\",\"Parameters\":
{\"ResourceId\":[\"stack-psvnq6cupymio3enl\"],\"TerminationProtectionDesiredState\":
[\"enabled\"]}}"
```

TEMPLATE CREATE:

1. Output the execution parameters for this change type to a JSON file; this example names it EnableTermProCFNParams.json:

   ```
   aws amscm get-change-type-version --change-type-id "ct-2uzbqr7x7mekd"
    --query "ChangeTypeVersion.ExecutionInputSchema" --output text >
    EnableTermProCFNParams.json
   ```

2. Modify and save the EnableTermProCFNParams file, retaining only the parameters that you want to change. For example, you can replace the contents with something like this:

   ```
   {
     "DocumentName": "AWSManagedServices-ManageResourceTerminationProtection",
     "Region": "us-east-1",
     "Parameters": {
       "ResourceId": ["stack-psvnq6cupymio3enl"],
       "TerminationProtectionDesiredState": ["enabled"]
     }
   }
   ```

3. Output the RFC template to a file in your current folder; this example names it EnableTermProCFNRfc.json:

   ```
   aws amscm create-rfc --generate-cli-skeleton > EnableTermProCFNRfc.json
   ```

4. Modify and save the EnableTermProCFNRfc.json file. For example, you can replace the contents with something like this:

   ```
   {
       "ChangeTypeId": "ct-2uzbqr7x7mekd",
       "ChangeTypeVersion": "1.0",
   ```

```
    "Title": "Enable termination protection on CFN instance"
}
```

5. Create the RFC, specifying the EnableTermProCFNRfc file and the EnableTermProCFNParams file:

```
aws amscm create-rfc --cli-input-json file://EnableTermProCFNRfc.json  --execution-
parameters file://EnableTermProCFNParams.json
```

   You receive the ID of the new RFC in the response and can use it to submit and monitor the RFC. Until you submit it, the RFC remains in the editing state and does not start.

Tips

> **Note**
>
> There is a related CT for Amazon EC2, EC2 stack: Updating termination protection.

To learn more about termination protection, see Protecting a stack from being deleted.

Automated IAM deployments using CFN ingest or stack update CTs in AMS

You can use these AMS change types to deploy IAM roles (the `AWS::IAM::Role` resource) in both multi-account landing zone (MALZ) and single-account landing zone (SALZ):

- Deployment | Ingestion | Stack from CloudFormation Template | Create (ct-36cn2avfrrj9v)
- Management | Custom Stack | Stack From CloudFormation Template | Update (ct-361tlo1k7339x)
- Management | Custom Stack | Stack From CloudFormation Template | Approve and Update (ct-1404e21baa2ox)

Validations performed on the IAM roles in your CFN template:

- **ManagedPolicyArns**: The attribute **ManagedPolicyArns** must not exist in `AWS::IAM::Role`. The validation disallows attaching managed policies to the role being provisioned. Instead, the permissions for the role can be managed using the inline policy through the property Policies.

- **PermissionsBoundary**: The policy used to set the permissions boundary for the role can only be the AMS vended managed policy: `AWSManagedServices_IAM_PermissionsBoundary`. This policy acts as a guard rail that protects the AMS infrastructure resources from being modified using the role being provisioned. With this default permissions boundary, the security benefits that AMS provides are preserved.

  The `AWSManagedServices_IAM_PermissionsBoundary` (the default) is required, without it, the request is rejected.

- **MaxSessionDuration**: The maximum session duration that can be set for the IAM role is 1 to 4 hours. AMS technical standard require a customer risk acceptance for session duration beyond 4 hours.

- **RoleName**: The following namespaces are preserved by AMS and cannot be used as IAM role name prefixes:

```
AmazonSSMRole,
AMS,
Ams,
ams,
AWSManagedServices,
customer_developer_role,
customer-mc-,
Managed_Services,
MC,
Mc,
mc,
SENTINEL,
Sentinel,
sentinel,
StackSet-AMS,
StackSet-Ams,
StackSet-ams,
StackSet-AWS,
StackSet-MC,
StackSet-Mc,
StackSet-mc
```

- **Policies**: The inline policy embedded in the IAM role can only include a set of IAM actions that are pre-approved by AMS. This is the upper bound of all IAM actions allowed to create an IAM role with (control policy). The control policy consists of:

- All actions in the AWS managed policy ReadOnlyAccess that provides read-only access to all AWS services and resources
- The following actions, with the restriction on cross-account S3 actions i.e. allowed S3 actions can only be performed on resources present in the same account as the role being created:

```
amscm:*,
amsskms:*,
lambda:InvokeFunction,
logs:CreateLogStream,
logs:PutLogEvents,
s3:AbortMultipartUpload,
s3:DeleteObject,
s3:DeleteObjectVersion,
s3:ObjectOwnerOverrideToBucketOwner,
s3:PutObject,
s3:ReplicateTags,
secretsmanager:GetRandomPassword,
sns:Publish
```

  Any IAM role created or updated through CFN ingest can allow actions listed on this control policy, or actions that are scoped down from (less permissive than) the actions listed on the control policy. Currently we allow these safe IAM actions that can be categorized as readonly actions, plus the above mentioned non-readonly actions that can't be accomplished through CTs and are pre-approved per AMS technical standard.

- **AssumeRolePolicyDocument**: The following entities are pre-approved and can be included in the trust policy to assume the role being created:
  - Any IAM entity (role, user, root user, STS assumed-role session) in the same account can assume the role.
  - The following AWS services can assume the role:

```
apigateway.amazonaws.com,
autoscaling.amazonaws.com,
cloudformation.amazonaws.com,
codebuild.amazonaws.com,
codedeploy.amazonaws.com,
codepipeline.amazonaws.com,
datapipeline.amazonaws.com,
datasync.amazonaws.com,
dax.amazonaws.com,
```

```
dms.amazonaws.com,
ec2.amazonaws.com,
ecs-tasks.amazonaws.com,
ecs.application-autoscaling.amazonaws.com,
elasticmapreduce.amazonaws.com,
es.amazonaws.com,
events.amazonaws.com,
firehose.amazonaws.com,
glue.amazonaws.com,
lambda.amazonaws.com,
monitoring.rds.amazonaws.com,
pinpoint.amazonaws.com,
rds.amazonaws.com,
redshift.amazonaws.com,
s3.amazonaws.com,
sagemaker.amazonaws.com,
servicecatalog.amazonaws.com,
sns.amazonaws.com,
ssm.amazonaws.com,
states.amazonaws.com,
storagegateway.amazonaws.com,
transfer.amazonaws.com,
vmie.amazonaws.com
```

- The SAML provider in the same account can assume the role. Currently, the only supported SAML provider name is `customer-saml`.

If one or more of the validations fail, the RFC is rejected. A sample RFC rejection reason look like this:

```
{"errorMessage":"[ 'LambdaRole: The maximum session duration (in seconds) should be a
 numeric value in the range 3600 to 14400 (i.e. 1 to 4 hours).', 'lambda-policy: Policy
 document is too permissive.']","errorType":"ClientError"}
```

If you need assistance with a failed RFC validation or execution, use the RFC correspondence to reach out to AMS. For instructions, see RFC correspondence and attachment (console). For any other questions, submit a service request. For a how-to, see Creating a Service Request.

> **Note**
>
> We do not currently enforce any IAM best practices as part of our IAM validations. For IAM best practices, see Security best practices in IAM.

Creating IAM roles with more permissive actions or enforcing IAM best practices

Create your IAM entities with the following manual change types:

- Deployment | Advanced stack components | Identity and Access Management (IAM) | Create entity or policy (ct-3dpd8mdd9jn1r)
- Management | Advanced stack components | Identity and Access Management (IAM) | Update entity or policy (ct-27tuth19k52b4)

We recommend that you read and understand our technical standards before filing these manual RFCs. For access, see How to access technical standards.

> **Note**
>
> Each IAM role directly created with these manual change types belongs to its own individual stack and does not reside in the same stack where the other infrastructure resources are created through CFN Ingest CT.

Updating IAM Roles created with CFN ingest through manual change types when updates cannot be done through automated change types

Use the Management | Advanced stack components | Identity and Access Management (IAM) | Update entity or policy (ct-27tuth19k52b4) change type.

> **Important**
>
> Updates on IAM roles through the manual CT are not reflected in the CFN stack templates and cause stack drift. Once the role has been updated through a manual request to a state that doesn't pass our validations, the role cannot be further updated using the Stack Update CT (ct-361tlo1k7339x) again as long as it continues to be non-compliant with our validations. The update CT can be used only if the CFN stack template is compliant

with our validations. However, the stack can still be updated via the Stack Update CT (ct-361tlo1k7339x), as long as the IAM resource that's non-compliant with our validations is not being updated and the CFN template passes our validations.

Deleting your IAM roles created through AWS CloudFormation ingest

If you want to delete the whole stack, use the following automated Delete Stack change type. For instructions, see Delete Stack:

- Change Type ID: ct-0q0bic0ywqk6c
- Classification: Management | Standard stacks | Stack | Delete and Management | Advanced stack components | Stack | Delete

If you want to delete an IAM role without deleting the whole stack, you can remove the IAM role from the CloudFormation template and use the updated template as an input to the automated Stack Update change type:

- Change Type ID: ct-361tlo1k7339x
- Classification: Management | Custom stack | Stack from CloudFormation template | Update

For instructions, see Update AWS CloudFormation ingest stack.

CodeDeploy requests

You can use AWS CodeDeploy to create application containers that you can then deploy through a CodeDeploy application group. For more information about CodeDeploy, see AWS CodeDeploy Documentation.

Working with AWS CodeDeploy involves the following process:

1. Create a CodeDeploy application. The CodeDeploy application is a name or container used by CodeDeploy to ensure that the correct revision, deployment configuration, and deployment group are referenced during a deployment.
2. Create a CodeDeploy deployment group. A CodeDeploy deployment group defines a set of individual instances targeted for a deployment. AMS has a separate change type for CodeDeploy deployment groups for EC2.

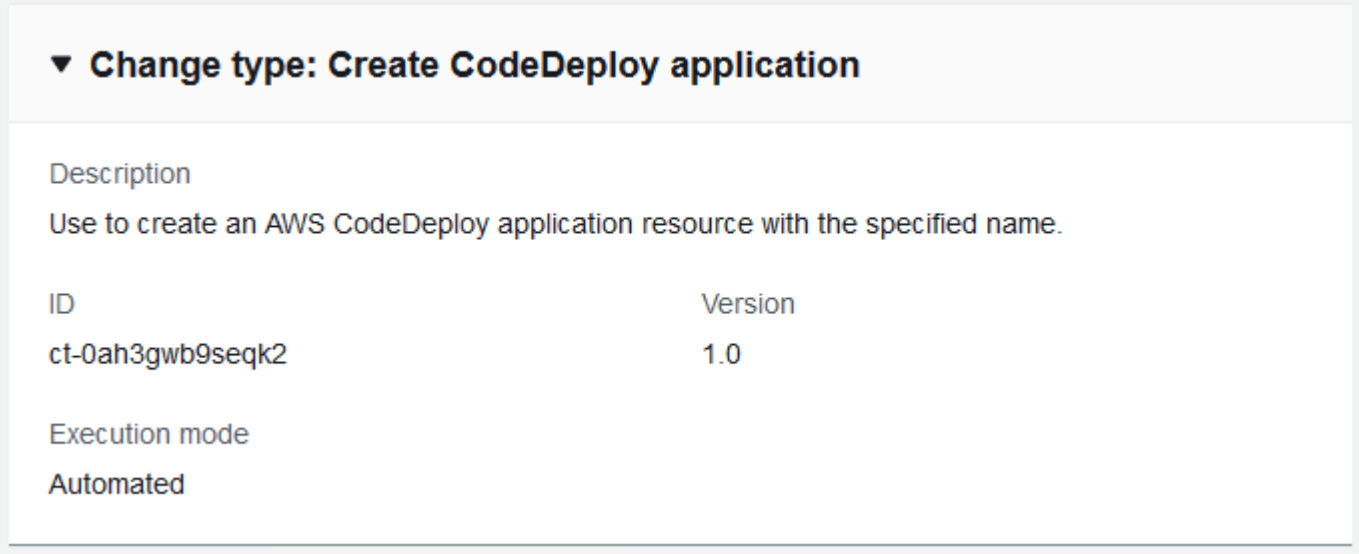
3. Deploy the CodeDeploy application through the CodeDeploy deployment group.

CodeDeploy application

Create or deploy CodeDeploy applications.

Create CodeDeploy application

Creating a CodeDeploy application with the console



How it works:

1. Navigate to the **Create RFC** page: In the left navigation pane of the AMS console click **RFCs** to open the RFCs list page, and then click **Create RFC**.
2. Choose a popular change type (CT) in the default **Browse change types** view, or select a CT in the **Choose by category** view.
   - **Browse by change type**: You can click on a popular CT in the **Quick create** area to immediately open the **Run RFC** page. Note that you cannot choose an older CT version with quick create.

     To sort CTs, use the **All change types** area in either the **Card** or **Table** view. In either view, select a CT and then click **Create RFC** to open the **Run RFC** page. If applicable, a **Create with older version** option appears next to the **Create RFC** button.

- **Choose by category**: Select a category, subcategory, item, and operation and the CT details box opens with an option to **Create with older version** if applicable. Click **Create RFC** to open the **Run RFC** page.

3. On the **Run RFC** page, open the CT name area to see the CT details box. A **Subject** is required (this is filled in for you if you choose your CT in the **Browse change types** view). Open the **Additional configuration** area to add information about the RFC.

   In the **Execution configuration** area, use available drop-down lists or enter values for the required parameters. To configure optional execution parameters, open the **Additional configuration** area.
4. When finished, click **Run**. If there are no errors, the **RFC successfully created** page displays with the submitted RFC details, and the initial **Run output**.
5. Open the **Run parameters** area to see the configurations you submitted. Refresh the page to update the RFC execution status. Optionally, cancel the RFC or create a copy of it with the options at the top of the page.

Creating a CodeDeploy application with the CLI

How it works:

1. Use either the Inline Create (you issue a `create-rfc` command with all RFC and execution parameters included), or Template Create (you create two JSON files, one for the RFC parameters and one for the execution parameters) and issue the `create-rfc` command with the two files as input. Both methods are described here.
2. Submit the RFC: `aws amscm submit-rfc --rfc-id` *`ID`* command with the returned RFC ID.

   Monitor the RFC: `aws amscm get-rfc --rfc-id` *`ID`* command.

To check the change type version, use this command:

```
aws amscm list-change-type-version-summaries --filter
 Attribute=ChangeTypeId,Value=CT_ID
```

> **Note**
>
> You can use any `CreateRfc` parameters with any RFC whether or not they are part of the schema for the change type. For example, to get notifications when the RFC status

changes, add this line, `--notification "{\"Email\": {\"EmailRecipients\" : [\"email@example.com\"]}}"` to the RFC parameters part of the request (not the execution parameters). For a list of all CreateRfc parameters, see the AMS Change Management API Reference.

INLINE CREATE:

Issue the create RFC command with execution parameters provided inline (escape quotation marks when providing execution parameters inline), and then submit the returned RFC ID. For example, you can replace the contents with something like this:

```
aws amscm create-rfc --change-type-id "ct-0ah3gwb9seqk2" --change-type-version "1.0"
 --title "Stack-Create-CD-App" --execution-parameters "{\"Description\":\"TestCdApp\",
\"VpcId\":\"VPC_ID\",\"StackTemplateId\":\"stm-sft6rv00000000000\",\"Name\":\"Test\",
\"TimeoutInMinutes\":60,\"Parameters\":{\"CodeDeployApplicationName\":\"Test\"}}"
```

TEMPLATE CREATE:

1. Output the execution parameters JSON schema for the CodeDeploy application CT to a file in your current folder; this example names it CreateCDAppParams.json:

   ```
   aws amscm get-change-type-version --change-type-id "ct-0ah3gwb9seqk2" --query
    "ChangeTypeVersion.ExecutionInputSchema" --output text > CreateCDAppParams.json
   ```

2. Modify and save the JSON file as follows. For example, you can replace the contents with something like this:

   ```
   {
   "Description":                    "Create WP CodeDeploy App",
   "VpcId":                          "VPC_ID",
   "StackTemplateId":                "stm-sft6rv00000000000",
   "Name":                           "WpCDApp",
   "TimeoutInMinutes":               60,
   "Parameters":   {
       "CodeDeployApplicationName":    "WordPressCDApp"
       }
   }
   ```

3. Output the JSON template for CreateRfc to a file in your current folder; this example names it CreateCDAppRfc.json:

```
aws amscm create-rfc --generate-cli-skeleton > CreateCDAppRfc.json
```

4. Modify and save the JSON file as follows. For example, you can replace the contents with something like this:

```
{
"ChangeTypeVersion":    "1.0",
"ChangeTypeId":         "ct-0ah3gwb9seqk2",
"Title":                "CD-App-Stack-RFC"
}
```

5. Create the RFC, specifying the CreateCDAppRfc file and the execution parameters file:

```
aws amscm create-rfc --cli-input-json file://CreateCDAppRfc.json --execution-
parameters file://CreateCDAppParams.json
```

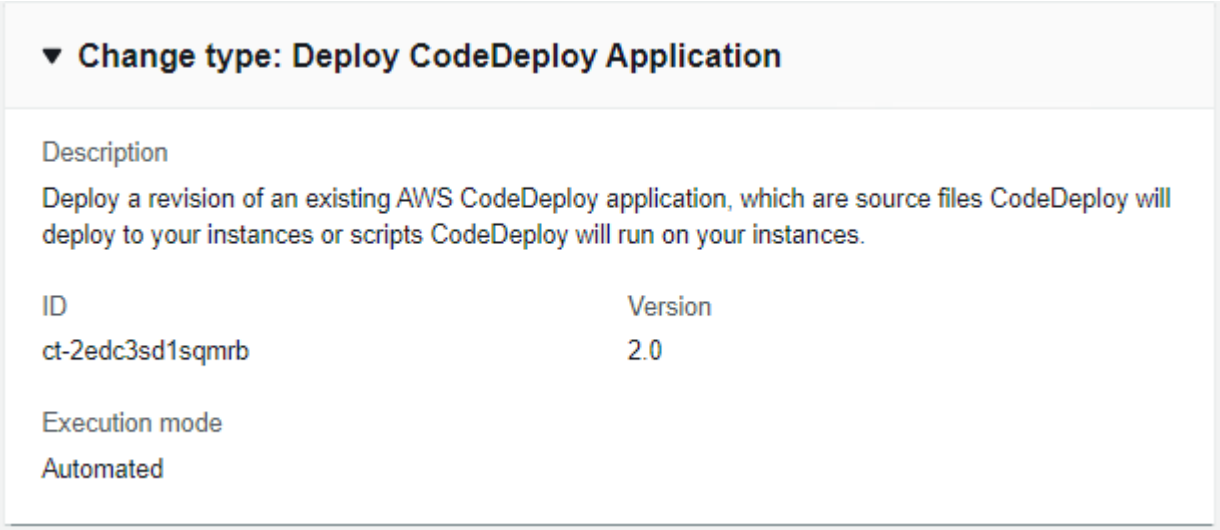
   You receive the ID of the new RFC in the response and can use it to submit and monitor the RFC. Until you submit it, the RFC remains in the editing state and does not start.

Tips

For more information about AWS CodeDeploy, see Create an Application with AWS CodeDeploy.

Deploy CodeDeploy application

Deploying a CodeDeploy application with the console



How it works:

1. Navigate to the **Create RFC** page: In the left navigation pane of the AMS console click **RFCs** to open the RFCs list page, and then click **Create RFC**.
2. Choose a popular change type (CT) in the default **Browse change types** view, or select a CT in the **Choose by category** view.
   - **Browse by change type**: You can click on a popular CT in the **Quick create** area to immediately open the **Run RFC** page. Note that you cannot choose an older CT version with quick create.

     To sort CTs, use the **All change types** area in either the **Card** or **Table** view. In either view, select a CT and then click **Create RFC** to open the **Run RFC** page. If applicable, a **Create with older version** option appears next to the **Create RFC** button.
   - **Choose by category**: Select a category, subcategory, item, and operation and the CT details box opens with an option to **Create with older version** if applicable. Click **Create RFC** to open the **Run RFC** page.
3. On the **Run RFC** page, open the CT name area to see the CT details box. A **Subject** is required (this is filled in for you if you choose your CT in the **Browse change types** view). Open the **Additional configuration** area to add information about the RFC.

   In the **Execution configuration** area, use available drop-down lists or enter values for the required parameters. To configure optional execution parameters, open the **Additional configuration** area.
4. When finished, click **Run**. If there are no errors, the **RFC successfully created** page displays with the submitted RFC details, and the initial **Run output**.
5. Open the **Run parameters** area to see the configurations you submitted. Refresh the page to update the RFC execution status. Optionally, cancel the RFC or create a copy of it with the options at the top of the page.

Deploying a CodeDeploy application with the CLI

How it works:

1. Use either the Inline Create (you issue a `create-rfc` command with all RFC and execution parameters included), or Template Create (you create two JSON files, one for the RFC parameters and one for the execution parameters) and issue the `create-rfc` command with the two files as input. Both methods are described here.

2. Submit the RFC: `aws amscm submit-rfc --rfc-id ID` command with the returned RFC ID.

   Monitor the RFC: `aws amscm get-rfc --rfc-id ID` command.

To check the change type version, use this command:

```
aws amscm list-change-type-version-summaries --filter
 Attribute=ChangeTypeId,Value=CT_ID
```

> **Note**
>
> You can use any `CreateRfc` parameters with any RFC whether or not they are part of the schema for the change type. For example, to get notifications when the RFC status changes, add this line, `--notification "{\"Email\": {\"EmailRecipients\" : [\"email@example.com\"]}}"` to the RFC parameters part of the request (not the execution parameters). For a list of all CreateRfc parameters, see the AMS Change Management API Reference.

INLINE CREATE:

Issue the create RFC command with execution parameters provided inline (escape quotation marks when providing execution parameters inline) and then submit the returned RFC ID. For example, you can replace the contents with something like this:

```
aws amscm create-rfc --change-type-id "ct-2edc3sd1sqmrb" --change-
type-version "2.0" --title "Stack-Deploy-CD-App" --execution-
parameters "{\"Description\":\"MyCDAppDeployTest\",\"VpcId\":
\"VPC_ID\",\"Name\":\"Test\",\"TimeoutInMinutes\":60,\"Parameters\":
{\"CodeDeployApplicationName\":\"TestCDApp\",\"CodeDeployDeploymentConfigName\":
\"CodeDeployDefault.OneAtATime\",\"CodeDeployDeploymentGroupName\":\"TestCDDepGroup\",
\"CodeDeployIgnoreApplicationStopFailures\":false,\"CodeDeployRevision\":
{\"RevisionType\":\"S3\",\"S3Location\":{\"S3Bucket\":\"amzn-s3-demo-bucket\",
\"S3BundleType\":\"tar\",\"S3Key\":\"TestKey\"}}}}"Test\"}}"
```

TEMPLATE CREATE:

1. Output the execution parameters JSON schema for the CodeDeploy application deployment CT; this example names it DeployCDAppParams.json:

```
aws amscm get-change-type-version --change-type-id "ct-2edc3sd1sqmrb" --query
 "ChangeTypeVersion.ExecutionInputSchema" --output text > DeployCDAppParams.json
```

2. Modify the JSON file as follows. For example, you can replace the contents with something like this:

```
{
"Description":                      "Deploy WordPress CodeDeploy Application",
"VpcId":                            "VPC_ID",
"Name":                             "WP CodeDeploy Deployment Group",
"TimeoutInMinutes":                 360,
"Parameters":   {
    "CodeDeployApplicationName":        "WordPressCDApp",
    "CodeDeployDeploymentGroupName":    "WordPressCDDepGroup",
    "CodeDeployIgnoreApplicationStopFailures": false,
    "CodeDeployRevision": {
      "RevisionType": "S3",
      "S3Location": {
        "S3Bucket": "amzn-s3-demo-bucket",
        "S3BundleType": "zip",
        "S3Key": "wordpress.zip" }
        }
    }
}
```

3. Output the JSON template for CreateRfc to a file in your current folder; this example names it DeployCDAppRfc.json:

```
aws amscm create-rfc --generate-cli-skeleton > DeployCDAppRfc.json
```

4. Modify and save the DeployCDAppRfc.json file. For example, you can replace the contents with something like this:

```
{
"ChangeTypeVersion":    "2.0",
"ChangeTypeId":         "ct-2edc3sd1sqmrb",
"Title":                "CD-Deploy-For-CD-APP-Stack-RFC"
}
```

5. Create the RFC, specifying the execution parameters file and the DeployCDAppRfc file:

```
aws amscm create-rfc --cli-input-json file://DeployCDAppRfc.json  --execution-
parameters file://DeployCDAppParams.json
```

You receive the ID of the new RFC in the response and can use it to submit and monitor the RFC. Until you submit it, the RFC remains in the editing state and does not start.

Tips

For more information, see Create a deployment with CodeDeploy.

CodeDeploy deployment groups

Create CodeDeploy application groups.

Create CodeDeploy deployment group

Creating a CodeDeploy deployment group with the console

How it works:

1. Navigate to the **Create RFC** page: In the left navigation pane of the AMS console click **RFCs** to open the RFCs list page, and then click **Create RFC**.
2. Choose a popular change type (CT) in the default **Browse change types** view, or select a CT in the **Choose by category** view.

- **Browse by change type**: You can click on a popular CT in the **Quick create** area to immediately open the **Run RFC** page. Note that you cannot choose an older CT version with quick create.

  To sort CTs, use the **All change types** area in either the **Card** or **Table** view. In either view, select a CT and then click **Create RFC** to open the **Run RFC** page. If applicable, a **Create with older version** option appears next to the **Create RFC** button.
- **Choose by category**: Select a category, subcategory, item, and operation and the CT details box opens with an option to **Create with older version** if applicable. Click **Create RFC** to open the **Run RFC** page.

3. On the **Run RFC** page, open the CT name area to see the CT details box. A **Subject** is required (this is filled in for you if you choose your CT in the **Browse change types** view). Open the **Additional configuration** area to add information about the RFC.

   In the **Execution configuration** area, use available drop-down lists or enter values for the required parameters. To configure optional execution parameters, open the **Additional configuration** area.
4. When finished, click **Run**. If there are no errors, the **RFC successfully created** page displays with the submitted RFC details, and the initial **Run output**.
5. Open the **Run parameters** area to see the configurations you submitted. Refresh the page to update the RFC execution status. Optionally, cancel the RFC or create a copy of it with the options at the top of the page.

Creating a CodeDeploy deployment group with the CLI

How it works:

1. Use either the Inline Create (you issue a `create-rfc` command with all RFC and execution parameters included), or Template Create (you create two JSON files, one for the RFC parameters and one for the execution parameters) and issue the `create-rfc` command with the two files as input. Both methods are described here.
2. Submit the RFC: `aws amscm submit-rfc --rfc-id` *`ID`* command with the returned RFC ID.

   Monitor the RFC: `aws amscm get-rfc --rfc-id` *`ID`* command.

To check the change type version, use this command:

```
aws amscm list-change-type-version-summaries --filter
 Attribute=ChangeTypeId,Value=CT_ID
```

Note

You can use any `CreateRfc` parameters with any RFC whether or not they are part of the schema for the change type. For example, to get notifications when the RFC status changes, add this line, `--notification "{\"Email\": {\"EmailRecipients\" : [\"email@example.com\"]}}"` to the RFC parameters part of the request (not the execution parameters). For a list of all CreateRfc parameters, see the AMS Change Management API Reference.

INLINE CREATE:

Issue the create RFC command with execution parameters provided inline (escape quotation marks when providing execution parameters inline) and then submit the returned RFC ID. For example, you can replace the contents with something like this:

```
aws amscm create-rfc --change-type-id "ct-2gd0u847qd9d2" --change-type-version
 "1.0" --title "Stack-Create-CD-Dep-Group" --execution-parameters "{\"Description
\":\"TestCdDepGroupRfc\",\"VpcId\":\"VPC_ID\",\"StackTemplateId\":\"stm-
sp9lrk00000000000\",\"Name\":\"MyTestCDDepGroup\",\"TimeoutInMinutes\":60,\"Parameters
\":{\"CodeDeployApplicationName\":\"TestCDApp\",\"CodeDeployAutoScalingGroups\":
[\"TestASG\"],\"CodeDeployDeploymentConfigName\":\"CodeDeployDefault.OneAtATime\",
\"CodeDeployDeploymentGroupName\":\"Test\",\"CodeDeployServiceRoleArn\":
\"arn:aws:iam::000000000:role/aws-codedeploy-role\"}}"
```

TEMPLATE CREATE:

1. Output the execution parameters JSON schema to a file in your current folder; this example names it CreateCDDepGroupParams.json:

   ```
   aws amscm get-change-type-version --change-type-id "ct-2gd0u847qd9d2"
    --query "ChangeTypeVersion.ExecutionInputSchema" --output text >
    CreateCDDepGroupParams.json
   ```

2. Modify and save the JSON file. For example, you can replace the contents with something like this:

```
{
"Description":                        "CreateCDDeploymentGroup",
"VpcId":                              "VPC_ID",
"StackTemplateId":                    "stm-sp9lrk00000000000",
"Name":                               "WordPressCDAppGroup",
"TimeoutInMinutes":                   60,
"Parameters":   {
    "CodeDeployApplicationName":         "WordPressCDApp",
    "CodeDeployAutoScalingGroups":       ["ASG_NAME"],
    "CodeDeployDeploymentConfigName":    "CodeDeployDefault.HalfAtATime",
    "CodeDeployDeploymentGroupName":     "UNIQUE_CDDepGroupNAME",
    "CodeDeployServiceRoleArn":          "arn:aws:iam::ACCOUNT_ID:role/aws-
codedeploy-role"
    }
}
```

3. Output the JSON template for CreateRfc to a file in your current folder; this example names it CreateCDDepGroupRfc.json:

```
aws amscm create-rfc --generate-cli-skeleton > CreateCDDepGroupRfc.json
```

4. Modify and save the JSON file. For example, you can replace the contents with something like this:

```
{
"ChangeTypeVersion":    "1.0",
"ChangeTypeId":         "ct-2gd0u847qd9d2",
"Title":                "CD-Dep-Group-RFC"
}
```

5. Create the RFC, specifying the CreateCDDepGroupRfc file and the execution parameters file:

```
aws amscm create-rfc --cli-input-json file://CreateCDDepGroupRfc.json --execution-
parameters file://CreateCDDepGroupParams.json
```

You receive the ID of the new RFC in the response and can use it to submit and monitor the RFC. Until you submit it, the RFC remains in the editing state and does not start.

Tips

For more information about AWS CodeDeploy deployment groups, see Create a Deployment Group with AWS CodeDeploy.

Create CodeDeploy deployment group for EC2

Creating a CodeDeploy deployment group for EC2 with the console

How it works:

1. Navigate to the **Create RFC** page: In the left navigation pane of the AMS console click **RFCs** to open the RFCs list page, and then click **Create RFC**.
2. Choose a popular change type (CT) in the default **Browse change types** view, or select a CT in the **Choose by category** view.
   - **Browse by change type**: You can click on a popular CT in the **Quick create** area to immediately open the **Run RFC** page. Note that you cannot choose an older CT version with quick create.

     To sort CTs, use the **All change types** area in either the **Card** or **Table** view. In either view, select a CT and then click **Create RFC** to open the **Run RFC** page. If applicable, a **Create with older version** option appears next to the **Create RFC** button.

- **Choose by category**: Select a category, subcategory, item, and operation and the CT details box opens with an option to **Create with older version** if applicable. Click **Create RFC** to open the **Run RFC** page.

3. On the **Run RFC** page, open the CT name area to see the CT details box. A **Subject** is required (this is filled in for you if you choose your CT in the **Browse change types** view). Open the **Additional configuration** area to add information about the RFC.

   In the **Execution configuration** area, use available drop-down lists or enter values for the required parameters. To configure optional execution parameters, open the **Additional configuration** area.
4. When finished, click **Run**. If there are no errors, the **RFC successfully created** page displays with the submitted RFC details, and the initial **Run output**.
5. Open the **Run parameters** area to see the configurations you submitted. Refresh the page to update the RFC execution status. Optionally, cancel the RFC or create a copy of it with the options at the top of the page.

Creating a CodeDeploy deployment group for EC2 with the CLI

How it works:

1. Use either the Inline Create (you issue a `create-rfc` command with all RFC and execution parameters included), or Template Create (you create two JSON files, one for the RFC parameters and one for the execution parameters) and issue the `create-rfc` command with the two files as input. Both methods are described here.
2. Submit the RFC: `aws amscm submit-rfc --rfc-id` *`ID`* command with the returned RFC ID.

   Monitor the RFC: `aws amscm get-rfc --rfc-id` *`ID`* command.

To check the change type version, use this command:

```
aws amscm list-change-type-version-summaries --filter
 Attribute=ChangeTypeId,Value=CT_ID
```

> **Note**
>
> You can use any `CreateRfc` parameters with any RFC whether or not they are part of the schema for the change type. For example, to get notifications when the RFC status

changes, add this line, `--notification "{\"Email\": {\"EmailRecipients\" : [\"email@example.com\"]}}"` to the RFC parameters part of the request (not the execution parameters). For a list of all CreateRfc parameters, see the AMS Change Management API Reference.

INLINE CREATE:

Issue the create RFC command with execution parameters provided inline (escape quotation marks when providing execution parameters inline), and then submit the returned RFC ID. For example, you can replace the contents with something like this:

```
aws amscm create-rfc --change-type-id "ct-00tlkda4242x7" --change-type-
version "1.0" --title "Stack-Create-CD-Ec2-Dep-Group" --execution-parameters
 "{\"Description\":\"MyTestCdDepEc2DepGroup\",\"VpcId\":\"VPC_ID\",\"Name\":
\"TestCDDepEc2Group\",\"StackTemplateId\":\"stm-n3hsoirgqeqqdbpk2\",\"TimeoutInMinutes
\":60,\"Parameters\":{\"ApplicationName\":\"TestCDApp\",\"DeploymentConfigName\":
\"CodeDeployDefault.OneAtATime\",\"AutoRollbackEnabled\":\"False\",\"EC2FilterTag\":
\"Name=Test\",\"EC2FilterTag2\":\"\",\"EC2FilterTag3\":\"\",\"ServiceRoleArn\":\"\"}}"
```

TEMPLATE CREATE:

1. Output the execution parameters JSON schema to a file; this example names it CreateCDDepGroupEc2Params.json:

   ```
   aws amscm get-change-type-version --change-type-id "ct-00tlkda4242x7"
    --query "ChangeTypeVersion.ExecutionInputSchema" --output text >
    CreateCDDepGroupEc2Params.json
   ```

2. Modify and save the JSON file. For example, you can replace the contents with something like this:

   ```
   {
   "Description":                    "CreateCDDepGroupEc2",
   "VpcId":                          "VPC_ID",
   "StackTemplateId":                "stm-n3hsoirgqeqqdbpk2",
   "Name":                           "CDAppGroupEc2",
   "TimeoutInMinutes":               60,
   "Parameters":   {
       "ApplicationName":        "CDAppEc2",
       "DeploymentConfigName":   "CodeDeployDefault.OneAtATime",
   ```

```
    "CodeDeployDeploymentGroupName":    "UNIQUE_CDDepGroupNAME",
    "CodeDeployServiceRoleArn":         "arn:aws:iam::ACCOUNT_ID:role/aws-
codedeploy-role"
    }
}
```

3. Output the JSON template for CreateRfc to a file in your current folder; this example names it CreateCDDepGroupEc2Rfc.json:

```
aws amscm create-rfc --generate-cli-skeleton > CreateCDDepGroupEc2Rfc.json
```

4. Modify and save the JSON file. For example, you can replace the contents with something like this:

```
{
"ChangeTypeVersion":    "1.0",
"ChangeTypeId":         "ct-00tlkda4242x7",
"Title":                "CD-Dep-Group-For-Ec2-Stack-RFC"
}
```

5. Create the RFC, specifying the CreateCDDepGroupEc2Rfc file and the execution parameters file:

```
aws amscm create-rfc --cli-input-json file://CreateCDDepGroupEc2Rfc.json --
execution-parameters file://CreateCDDepGroupEc2Params.json
```

   You receive the ID of the new RFC in the response and can use it to submit and monitor the RFC. Until you submit it, the RFC remains in the editing state and does not start.

Tips

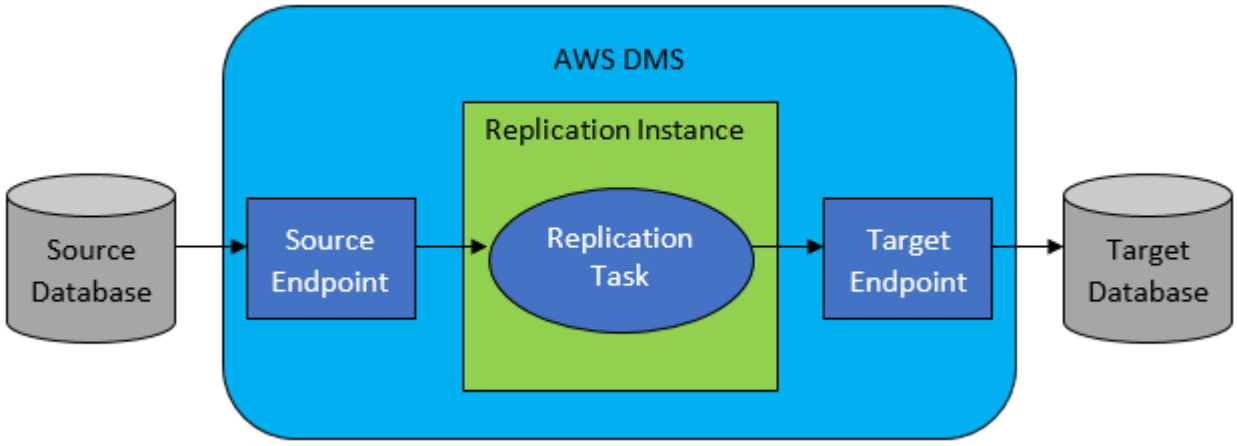
For more information about AWS CodeDeploy deployment groups, see Create a Deployment Group with AWS CodeDeploy.

AWS Database Migration Service (AWS DMS)

AWS Database Migration Service (AWS DMS) helps you migrate databases to AMS easily and securely. You can migrate your data to and from most widely used commercial and open-source databases, such as Oracle, MySQL, and PostgreSQL. The service supports homogeneous migrations such as Oracle to Oracle, and also heterogeneous migrations between different database

platforms, such as Oracle to PostgreSQL or MySQL to Oracle. AWS DMS is an AWS service; the AMS CTs help you create AWS DMS resources in your AMS-managed account

The following graphic depicts the workflow of an database migration.



Topics

- AWS Database Migration Service (AWS DMS), before you begin
- AWS DMS, required data for setup
- AWS DMS setup tasks
- AWS DMS management

AWS Database Migration Service (AWS DMS), before you begin

When planning a database migration using the AMS AWS DMS, consider the following:

- Source and target endpoints: You need to know what information and tables in the source database need to be migrated to the target database. AMS AWS DMS supports basic schema migration, including the creation of tables and primary keys. However, AMS AWS DMS doesn't automatically create secondary indexes, foreign keys, accounts, and so on in the target database. See Sources for Data Migration and Targets for Data Migration for more information.
- Schema/Code Migration: AMS AWS DMS doesn't perform schema or code conversion. You can use tools such as Oracle SQL Developer, MySQL Workbench, or pgAdmin III to convert your schema. If you want to convert an existing schema to a different database engine, you can use the AWS Schema Conversion Tool. It can create a target schema and also can generate and create an entire schema: tables, indexes, views, and so on. You can also use the tool to convert PL/SQL or TSQL to PgSQL and other formats.

- Unsupported data types: Some source data types need to be converted into the equivalent data types for the target database.

AWS DMS scenarios to consider

The following, documented, scenarios might help you craft your own database migration path.

- Migrate data from an on-prem MySQL server to Amazon RDS MySQL: See AWS blog post Migrate On-Premises MySQL Data to Amazon RDS (and back)
- Migrate data from an Oracle database to Amazon RDS Aurora PostgreSQL database: See AWS blog post A quick introduction to migrating from an Oracle database to an Amazon Aurora PostgreSQL database
- Migrate data from RDS MySQL to S3: See AWS blog post How to archive data from relational databases to Amazon Glacier using AWS DMS

For a database migration, you must do the following:

- Plan your database migration, this includes setting up a replication subnet group.
- Allocate a replication instance that performs all the processes for the migration.
- Specify a source and a target database endpoint.
- Create a task or set of tasks to define what tables and replication processes you want to use.
- Create the AWS DMS IAM `dms-cloudwatch-logs-role` and `dms-vpc-role` roles. If you use Amazon Redshift as a target database, you must also create and add the IAM role `dms-access-for-endpoint` to your AWS account. For more information, see Creating the IAM roles to use with the AWS CLI and AWS DMS API.

These walkthroughs provide an example of using the AMS console or AMS CLI to create an AWS Database Migration Service (AWS DMS). CLI commands for creating the AWS DMS replication instance, subnet group, and task as well as an AWS DMS source endpoint and target endpoint are provided.

To learn more about AMS AWS DMS, see AWS Database Migration Service for general information and AWS Database Migration Service FAQs for answers to common questions.

AWS DMS, required data for setup

For each of the following AWS DMS walkthroughs, some data in common is needed.

- `Description`: Meaningful information about the resource, this is separate from other parameter `Description` options.
- `VpcId`: The VPC to use. You can find this out by running the ListVpcSummaries operation of the SKMS API (`list-vpc-summaries` in the CLI) or by looking on the **VPCs** page in the AMS Console. For the AMS SKMS API reference, see the **Reports** tab in the AWS Artifact Console.
- `Name`: A name for the stack or stack component; this becomes the Stack Name.
- `TimeoutInMinutes`: How many minutes are allowed for the creation of the stack before the RFC is failed. This setting will not delay the RFC execution, but you must give enough time (for example, don't specify `"5"`).
- `ChangeTypeId`, `ChangeTypeVersion`, and `StackTemplateId`: These are required but vary per CT and their values are provided in each relevant section, following.

AWS DMS setup tasks

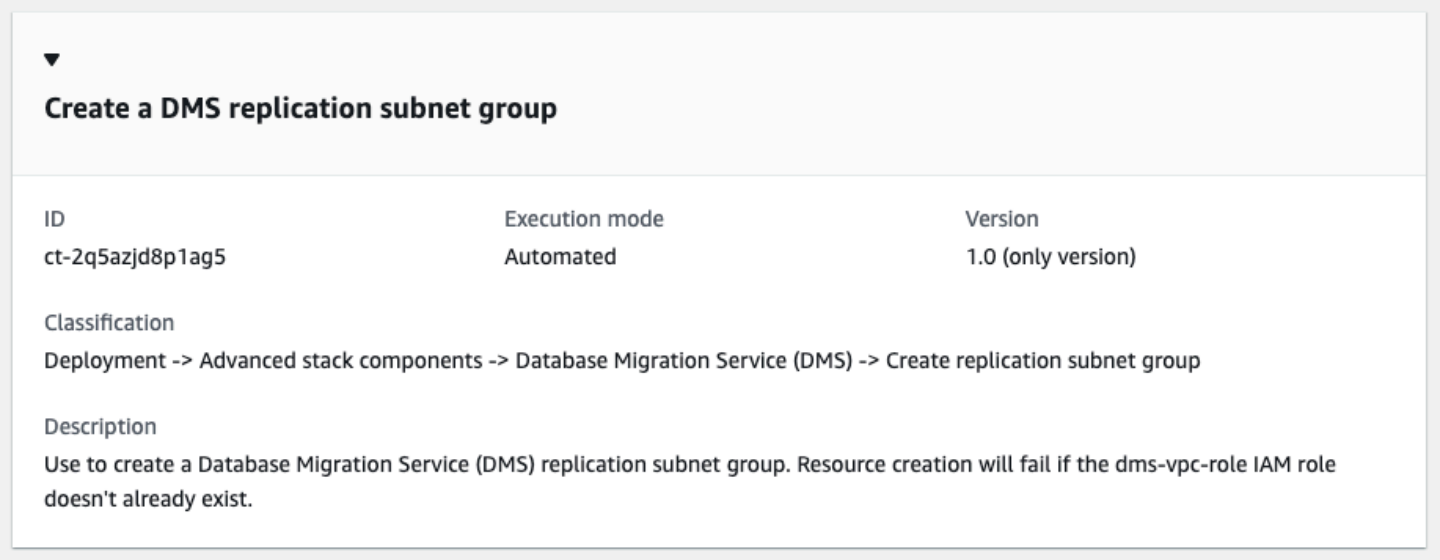
Set up AWS DMS with the following walkthroughs.

1: AWS DMS replication subnet group: Create

You can use the AMS console or API/CLI to create an AMS AWS DMS replication subnet group.

Create AWS DMS replication subnet group

Creating a AWS DMS replication subnet group with the console



> **Note**
>
> This CT fails if the `dms-vpc-role` IAM role doesn't exist in the account.

How it works:

1. Navigate to the **Create RFC** page: In the left navigation pane of the AMS console click **RFCs** to open the RFCs list page, and then click **Create RFC**.
2. Choose a popular change type (CT) in the default **Browse change types** view, or select a CT in the **Choose by category** view.
   - **Browse by change type**: You can click on a popular CT in the **Quick create** area to immediately open the **Run RFC** page. Note that you cannot choose an older CT version with quick create.

     To sort CTs, use the **All change types** area in either the **Card** or **Table** view. In either view, select a CT and then click **Create RFC** to open the **Run RFC** page. If applicable, a **Create with older version** option appears next to the **Create RFC** button.
   - **Choose by category**: Select a category, subcategory, item, and operation and the CT details box opens with an option to **Create with older version** if applicable. Click **Create RFC** to open the **Run RFC** page.

3. On the **Run RFC** page, open the CT name area to see the CT details box. A **Subject** is required (this is filled in for you if you choose your CT in the **Browse change types** view). Open the **Additional configuration** area to add information about the RFC.

   In the **Execution configuration** area, use available drop-down lists or enter values for the required parameters. To configure optional execution parameters, open the **Additional configuration** area.

4. When finished, click **Run**. If there are no errors, the **RFC successfully created** page displays with the submitted RFC details, and the initial **Run output**.

5. Open the **Run parameters** area to see the configurations you submitted. Refresh the page to update the RFC execution status. Optionally, cancel the RFC or create a copy of it with the options at the top of the page.

Creating a AWS DMS replication subnet group with the CLI

> **Note**
>
> This CT fails if the `dms-vpc-role` IAM role doesn't exist in the account.

How it works:

1. Use either the Inline Create (you issue a `create-rfc` command with all RFC and execution parameters included), or Template Create (you create two JSON files, one for the RFC parameters and one for the execution parameters) and issue the `create-rfc` command with the two files as input. Both methods are described here.
2. Submit the RFC: `aws amscm submit-rfc --rfc-id` *`ID`* command with the returned RFC ID.

   Monitor the RFC: `aws amscm get-rfc --rfc-id` *`ID`* command.

To check the change type version, use this command:

```
aws amscm list-change-type-version-summaries --filter
 Attribute=ChangeTypeId,Value=CT_ID
```

> **Note**
>
> You can use any `CreateRfc` parameters with any RFC whether or not they are part of the schema for the change type. For example, to get notifications when the RFC status changes, add this line, `--notification "{\"Email\": {\"EmailRecipients\" : [\"email@example.com\"]}}"` to the RFC parameters part of the request (not the execution parameters). For a list of all CreateRfc parameters, see the AMS Change Management API Reference.

INLINE CREATE:

Issue the create RFC command with execution parameters provided inline (escape quotes when providing execution parameters inline) and then submit the returned RFC ID. For example, you can replace the contents with something like this:

```
aws --profile saml --region us-east-1 amscm create-rfc --change-type-id
 "ct-2q5azjd8p1ag5" --change-type-version "1.0" --title "TestDMSRepSG" --execution-
parameters "{\"Description\":\"DMSTestRepSG\",\"VpcId\":\"VPC-ID\",\"Name\":\"Test
 Stack\",\"Parameters\":{\"Description\":\"DESCRIPTION\",\"SubnetIds\":[\"SUBNET-ID\",
 \"SUBNET-ID\"]},\"TimeoutInMinutes\":60,\"StackTemplateId\":\"stm-j637f96ls1h4oy5fj
\"}"
```

TEMPLATE CREATE:

1. Output the execution parameters for this change type to a JSON file; this example names it CreateDmsRsgParams.json:

   ```
   aws amscm get-change-type-version --change-type-id "ct-2q5azjd8p1ag5" --query
    "ChangeTypeVersion.ExecutionInputSchema" --output text > CreateDmsRsgParams.json
   ```

2. Modify and save the execution parameters CreateDmsRsgParams.json file. For example, you can replace the contents with something like this:

   ```
   {
   "Description":          "DMSTestRepSG",
   "VpcId":                "VPC_ID",
   "TimeoutInMinutes":     60,
   "StackTemplateId":      "stm-j637f96ls1h4oy5fj",
   "Name":                 "Test RSG",
   ```

```
"Parameters":   {
    "Description":            "DESCRIPTION",
    "SubnetIds":              ["SUBNET_ID", "SUBNET_ID"]
    }
}
```

3. Output the JSON template to a file in your current folder; this example names it CreateDmsRsgRfc.json:

```
aws amscm create-rfc --generate-cli-skeleton > CreateDmsRsgRfc.json
```

4. Modify and save the CreateDmsRsgRfc.json file. For example, you can replace the contents with something like this:

```
{
"ChangeTypeVersion":    "1.0",
"ChangeTypeId":         "ct-2q5azjd8p1ag5",
"Title":                "DMS-RSG-Create-RFC"
}
```

5. Create the RFC, specifying the execution parameters file and the CreateDmsRsgRfc file:

```
aws amscm create-rfc --cli-input-json file://CreateDmsRsgRfc.json --execution-
parameters file://CreateDmsRsgParams.json
```

   You receive the ID of the new RFC in the response and can use it to submit and monitor the RFC. Until you submit it, the RFC remains in the editing state and does not start.

Tips

- This CT fails if the `dms-vpc-role` IAM role doesn't exist in the account.
- You can add up to 50 tags, but to do so you must enable the **Additional configuration** view.

For more information about DMS replication instances and subnet groups, see Setting Up a Network for a Replication Instance.

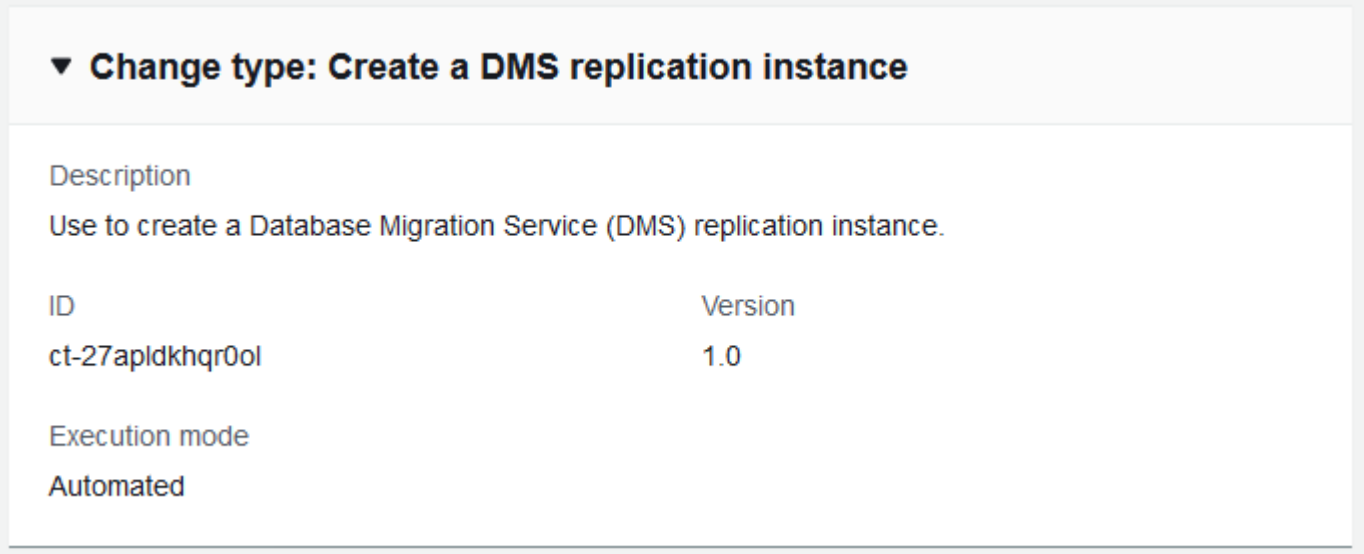
2: AWS DMS replication instance: Create

You can use the AMS console or API/CLI to create an AMS AWS DMS replication instance.

Create AWS DMS replication instance

Creating a AWS DMS replication instance with the console

Screenshot of this change type in the AMS console:



How it works:

1. Navigate to the **Create RFC** page: In the left navigation pane of the AMS console click **RFCs** to open the RFCs list page, and then click **Create RFC**.
2. Choose a popular change type (CT) in the default **Browse change types** view, or select a CT in the **Choose by category** view.
   - **Browse by change type**: You can click on a popular CT in the **Quick create** area to immediately open the **Run RFC** page. Note that you cannot choose an older CT version with quick create.

     To sort CTs, use the **All change types** area in either the **Card** or **Table** view. In either view, select a CT and then click **Create RFC** to open the **Run RFC** page. If applicable, a **Create with older version** option appears next to the **Create RFC** button.
   - **Choose by category**: Select a category, subcategory, item, and operation and the CT details box opens with an option to **Create with older version** if applicable. Click **Create RFC** to open the **Run RFC** page.
3. On the **Run RFC** page, open the CT name area to see the CT details box. A **Subject** is required (this is filled in for you if you choose your CT in the **Browse change types** view). Open the **Additional configuration** area to add information about the RFC.

In the **Execution configuration** area, use available drop-down lists or enter values for the required parameters. To configure optional execution parameters, open the **Additional configuration** area.

4. When finished, click **Run**. If there are no errors, the **RFC successfully created** page displays with the submitted RFC details, and the initial **Run output**.
5. Open the **Run parameters** area to see the configurations you submitted. Refresh the page to update the RFC execution status. Optionally, cancel the RFC or create a copy of it with the options at the top of the page.

Creating a AWS DMS replication instance with the CLI

How it works:

1. Use either the Inline Create (you issue a `create-rfc` command with all RFC and execution parameters included), or Template Create (you create two JSON files, one for the RFC parameters and one for the execution parameters) and issue the `create-rfc` command with the two files as input. Both methods are described here.
2. Submit the RFC: `aws amscm submit-rfc --rfc-id` *`ID`* command with the returned RFC ID.

   Monitor the RFC: `aws amscm get-rfc --rfc-id` *`ID`* command.

To check the change type version, use this command:

```
aws amscm list-change-type-version-summaries --filter
 Attribute=ChangeTypeId,Value=CT_ID
```

> **Note**
>
> You can use any `CreateRfc` parameters with any RFC whether or not they are part of the schema for the change type. For example, to get notifications when the RFC status changes, add this line, `--notification "{\"Email\": {\"EmailRecipients\" : [\"email@example.com\"]}}"` to the RFC parameters part of the request (not the execution parameters). For a list of all CreateRfc parameters, see the AMS Change Management API Reference.

INLINE CREATE:

Issue the create RFC command with execution parameters provided inline (escape quotes when providing execution parameters inline), and then submit the returned RFC ID. For example, you can replace the contents with something like this:

```
aws --profile saml --region us-east-1 amscm create-rfc --change-type-id
 "ct-27apldkhqr0ol" --change-type-version "1.0" --title "TestDMSRepInstance" --
execution-parameters "{\"Description\":\"DMSTestRepInstance\",\"VpcId\":\"VPC-ID\",
\"Name\":\"REP-INSTANCE-NAME\",\"Parameters\":{\"InstanceClass\":\"dms.t2.micro\",
\"ReplicationSubnetGroupIdentifier\":\"TEST-REP-SG\",\"SecurityGroupIds\":\"SG-ID, SG-
ID\"},\"TimeoutInMinutes\":60,\"StackTemplateId\":\"stm-3n1j5hdrmiiiuqk6v\"}"
```

While your replication instance is being created, you can specify the source and target data stores. The source and target data stores can be on an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance, an AWS S3 Bucket, an Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS) DB instance, or an on-premises database.

TEMPLATE CREATE:

1. Output the execution parameters for this change type to a JSON file; this example names it CreateDmsRiParams.json:

   ```
   aws amscm get-change-type-version --change-type-id "ct-27apldkhqr0ol" --query
    "ChangeTypeVersion.ExecutionInputSchema" --output text > CreateDmsRiParams.json
   ```

2. Modify and save the execution parameters CreateDmsRiParams.json file. For example, you can replace the contents with something like this:

   ```
   {
   "Description":          "DMSTestRepInstance",
   "VpcId":                "VPC_ID",
   "Name":                 "Test RI",
   "StackTemplateId":      "stm-3n1j5hdrmiiiuqk6v",
   "TimeoutInMinutes":     60,
   "Parameters":   {
       "Description":                      "DESCRIPTION",
       "InstanceClass":                    "dms.t2.micro",
       "ReplicationSubnetGroupIdentifier": "TEST-REP-SG",
       "SecurityGroupIds":                 ["SG-ID, SG-ID"}
       }
   ```

```
}
```

3. Output the JSON template to a file in your current folder; this example names it CreateDmsRiRfc.json:

```
aws amscm create-rfc --generate-cli-skeleton > CreateDmsRiRfc.json
```

4. Modify and save the CreateDmsRiRfc.json file. For example, you can replace the contents with something like this:

```
{
"ChangeTypeVersion":    "1.0",
"ChangeTypeId":         "ct-27apldkhqr0ol",
"Title":                "DMS-RI-Create-RFC"
}
```

5. Create the RFC, specifying the execution parameters file and the CreateDmsRiRfc file:

```
aws amscm create-rfc --cli-input-json file://CreateDmsRiRfc.json --execution-
parameters file://CreateDmsRiParams.json
```

   You receive the ID of the new RFC in the response and can use it to submit and monitor the RFC. Until you submit it, the RFC remains in the editing state and does not start.

Tips

- You can add up to 50 tags, but to do so you must enable the **Additional configuration** view.
- You must create a replication instance on an EC2 instance in your AMS VPC that has sufficient storage and processing power to perform the tasks you assign and migrate data from your source database to the target database. The required size of this instance varies depending on the amount of data you need to migrate and the tasks that you need the instance to perform. The replication instance provides high availability and failover support using a Multi-AZ deployment when you select the `MultiAZ` option. For more information about replication instances, see Working with an AWS DMS Replication Instance.

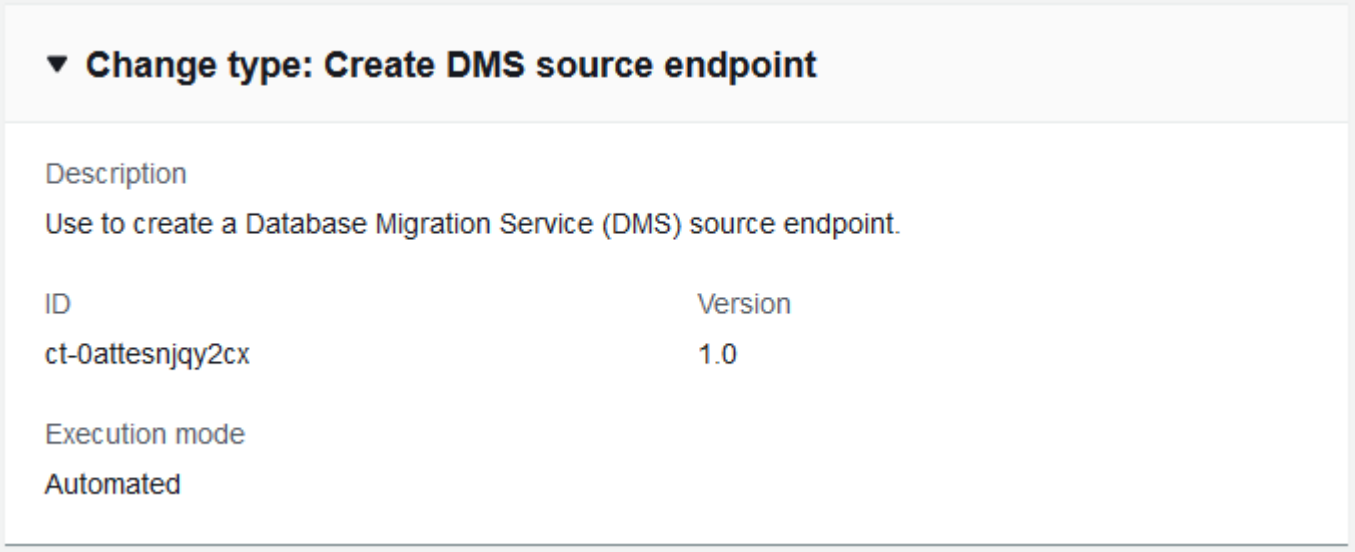
3: AWS DMS source endpoint: Create, create for Mongo DB, create for S3

You can use the AMS console or API/CLI to create an AMS DMS source endpoint for various databases, we provide three examples.

DMS source endpoint: creating

Creating a DMS Source Endpoint with the Console

Screenshot of this change type in the AMS console:



How it works:

1. Navigate to the **Create RFC** page: In the left navigation pane of the AMS console click **RFCs** to open the RFCs list page, and then click **Create RFC**.
2. Choose a popular change type (CT) in the default **Browse change types** view, or select a CT in the **Choose by category** view.
   - **Browse by change type**: You can click on a popular CT in the **Quick create** area to immediately open the **Run RFC** page. Note that you cannot choose an older CT version with quick create.

     To sort CTs, use the **All change types** area in either the **Card** or **Table** view. In either view, select a CT and then click **Create RFC** to open the **Run RFC** page. If applicable, a **Create with older version** option appears next to the **Create RFC** button.
   - **Choose by category**: Select a category, subcategory, item, and operation and the CT details box opens with an option to **Create with older version** if applicable. Click **Create RFC** to open the **Run RFC** page.
3. On the **Run RFC** page, open the CT name area to see the CT details box. A **Subject** is required (this is filled in for you if you choose your CT in the **Browse change types** view). Open the **Additional configuration** area to add information about the RFC.

In the **Execution configuration** area, use available drop-down lists or enter values for the required parameters. To configure optional execution parameters, open the **Additional configuration** area.

4. When finished, click **Run**. If there are no errors, the **RFC successfully created** page displays with the submitted RFC details, and the initial **Run output**.
5. Open the **Run parameters** area to see the configurations you submitted. Refresh the page to update the RFC execution status. Optionally, cancel the RFC or create a copy of it with the options at the top of the page.

Creating a DMS Source Endpoint with the CLI

How it works:

1. Use either the Inline Create (you issue a `create-rfc` command with all RFC and execution parameters included), or Template Create (you create two JSON files, one for the RFC parameters and one for the execution parameters) and issue the `create-rfc` command with the two files as input. Both methods are described here.
2. Submit the RFC: `aws amscm submit-rfc --rfc-id` *`ID`* command with the returned RFC ID.

   Monitor the RFC: `aws amscm get-rfc --rfc-id` *`ID`* command.

To check the change type version, use this command:

```
aws amscm list-change-type-version-summaries --filter
 Attribute=ChangeTypeId,Value=CT_ID
```

> **Note**
>
> You can use any `CreateRfc` parameters with any RFC whether or not they are part of the schema for the change type. For example, to get notifications when the RFC status changes, add this line, `--notification "{\"Email\": {\"EmailRecipients\" : [\"email@example.com\"]}}"` to the RFC parameters part of the request (not the execution parameters). For a list of all CreateRfc parameters, see the AMS Change Management API Reference.

INLINE CREATE:

Issue the create RFC command with execution parameters provided inline (escape quotes when providing execution parameters inline), and then submit the returned RFC ID. For example, you can replace the contents with something like this:

```
aws --profile saml --region us-east-1 amscm create-rfc --title "MariaDB-DMS-
Source-Endpoint" --aws-account-id ACCOUNT-ID --change-type-id ct-0attesnjqy2cx --
change-type-version 1.0 --execution-parameters "{\"Description\":\"DESCRIPTION.\",
\"VpcId\":\"VPC-ID\",\"Name\":\"MariaDB-DMS-SE\",\"Parameters\":{\"EngineName\":
\"mariadb\",\"ServerName\":\"mariadb.db.example.com\",\"Port\":3306,\"Username\":
\"DB-USER\",\"Password\":\"DB-PW\"},\"TimeoutInMinutes\":60,\"StackTemplateId\":\"stm-
pud4ghhkp7395n9bc\"}"
```

TEMPLATE CREATE:

1. Output the execution parameters for this change type to a JSON file named CreateDmsSeParams.json.

   ```
   aws amscm get-change-type-version --change-type-id "ct-0attesnjqy2cx" --query
    "ChangeTypeVersion.ExecutionInputSchema" --output text > CreateDmsSeParams.json
   ```

2. Modify and save the execution parameters JSON file. For example, you can replace the contents with something like this:

   ```
   {
   "Description":          "MariaDB-DMS-SE",
   "VpcId":                "VPC_ID",
   "Name":                 "Test SE",
   "StackTemplateId":      "stm-pud4ghhkp7395n9bc",
   "TimeoutInMinutes":     60,
   "Parameters":   {
       "Description":      "DESCRIPTION",
       "EngineName":       "mariadb",
       "ServerName":       "mariadb.db.example.com",
       "Port":             "3306",
       "Username":         "DB-USER",
       "Password":         "DB-PW",}
       }
   }
   ```

3. Output the JSON template to a file in your current folder; this example names it CreateDmsSeRfc.json:

```
aws amscm create-rfc --generate-cli-skeleton > CreateDmsSeRfc.json
```

4. Modify and save the CreateDmsSeRfc.json file. For example, you can replace the contents with something like this:

```
{
"ChangeTypeVersion":    "1.0",
"ChangeTypeId":         "ct-0attesnjqy2cx",
"Title":                "MariaDB-DMS-Source-Endpoint"
}
```

5. Create the RFC, specifying the execution parameters file and the CreateDmsSeRfc file:

```
aws amscm create-rfc --cli-input-json file://CreateDmsSeRfc.json --execution-
parameters file://CreateDmsSeParams.json
```

   You receive the ID of the new RFC in the response and can use it to submit and monitor the RFC. Until you submit it, the RFC remains in the editing state and does not start.

Tips

Before you create the DMS endpoint, make sure that your password doesn't contain unsupported characters. For more information, see Creating source and target endpoints in the *AWS Database Migration Service User Guide*.

To learn more, see Sources for Data Migration.

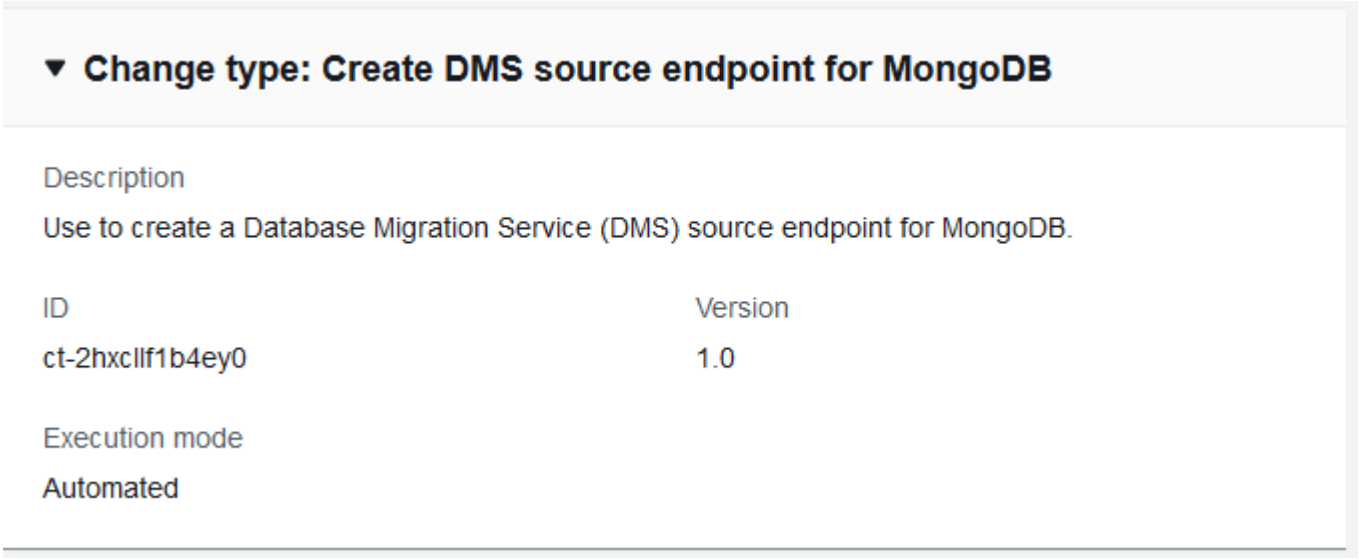
For an S3 source endpoint, see DMS source endpoint for S3: creating.

For a Mongo DB source endpoint, see DMS source endpoint for MongoDB: Creating.

DMS source endpoint for MongoDB: Creating

Creating a DMS Mongo DB Source Endpoint with the Console

Screenshot of this change type in the AMS console:



How it works:

1. Navigate to the **Create RFC** page: In the left navigation pane of the AMS console click **RFCs** to open the RFCs list page, and then click **Create RFC**.
2. Choose a popular change type (CT) in the default **Browse change types** view, or select a CT in the **Choose by category** view.
   - **Browse by change type**: You can click on a popular CT in the **Quick create** area to immediately open the **Run RFC** page. Note that you cannot choose an older CT version with quick create.

     To sort CTs, use the **All change types** area in either the **Card** or **Table** view. In either view, select a CT and then click **Create RFC** to open the **Run RFC** page. If applicable, a **Create with older version** option appears next to the **Create RFC** button.
   - **Choose by category**: Select a category, subcategory, item, and operation and the CT details box opens with an option to **Create with older version** if applicable. Click **Create RFC** to open the **Run RFC** page.
3. On the **Run RFC** page, open the CT name area to see the CT details box. A **Subject** is required (this is filled in for you if you choose your CT in the **Browse change types** view). Open the **Additional configuration** area to add information about the RFC.

   In the **Execution configuration** area, use available drop-down lists or enter values for the required parameters. To configure optional execution parameters, open the **Additional configuration** area.

4. When finished, click **Run**. If there are no errors, the **RFC successfully created** page displays with the submitted RFC details, and the initial **Run output**.
5. Open the **Run parameters** area to see the configurations you submitted. Refresh the page to update the RFC execution status. Optionally, cancel the RFC or create a copy of it with the options at the top of the page.

Creating a DMS Mongo DB Source Endpoint with the CLI

How it works:

1. Use either the Inline Create (you issue a `create-rfc` command with all RFC and execution parameters included), or Template Create (you create two JSON files, one for the RFC parameters and one for the execution parameters) and issue the `create-rfc` command with the two files as input. Both methods are described here.
2. Submit the RFC: `aws amscm submit-rfc --rfc-id` *`ID`* command with the returned RFC ID.

   Monitor the RFC: `aws amscm get-rfc --rfc-id` *`ID`* command.

To check the change type version, use this command:

```
aws amscm list-change-type-version-summaries --filter
 Attribute=ChangeTypeId,Value=CT_ID
```

> **Note**
>
> You can use any `CreateRfc` parameters with any RFC whether or not they are part of the schema for the change type. For example, to get notifications when the RFC status changes, add this line, `--notification "{\"Email\": {\"EmailRecipients \" : [\"email@example.com\"]}}"` to the RFC parameters part of the request (not the execution parameters). For a list of all CreateRfc parameters, see the AMS Change Management API Reference.

INLINE CREATE:

Issue the create RFC command with execution parameters provided inline (escape quotes when providing execution parameters inline), and then submit the returned RFC ID. For example, you can replace the contents with something like this:

```
aws amscm  --profile saml --region us-east-1 create-rfc --change-type-id
 "ct-2hxcllf1b4ey0" --change-type-version "1.0" --title 'DMS_Source_MongoDB'
 --description "DESCRIPTION"  --execution-parameters "{\"Description\":
\"DMS_MongoDB_Source_Endpoint\",\"VpcId\":\"VPC_ID\",\"Name\":\"DMS-Mongo-SE\",
\"StackTemplateId\":\"stm-pud4ghhkp7395n9bc\",\"TimeoutInMinutes\":60,\"Parameters\":
{\"DatabaseName\":\"mytestdb\",\"EngineName\":\"mongodb\",\"Port\":27017,\"ServerName
\":\"test.example.com\"}}"
```

TEMPLATE CREATE:

1. Output the execution parameters for this change type to a JSON file named CreateDmsSeMongoParams.json.

   ```
   aws amscm get-change-type-version --change-type-id "ct-2hxcllf1b4ey0"
    --query "ChangeTypeVersion.ExecutionInputSchema" --output text >
    CreateDmsSeMongoParams.json
   ```

2. Modify and save the execution parameters JSON file. For example, you can replace the contents with something like this:

   ```
   {
   "Description":          "MongoDB-DMS-SE",
   "VpcId":                "VPC_ID",
   "StackTemplateId":      "stm-pud4ghhkp7395n9bc",
   "Name":                 "Test Mongo SE",
   "TimeoutInMinutes":     60,
   "Parameters":   {
       "Description":      "DESCRIPTION",
       "DatabaseName":       "mytestdb",
       "EngineName":       "mongodb",
       "ServerName":       "test.example.com",
       "Port":             "27017"
       }
   }
   ```

3. Output the JSON template to a file in your current folder; this example names it CreateDmsSeMongoRfc.json:

```
aws amscm create-rfc --generate-cli-skeleton > CreateDmsSeMongoRfc.json
```

4. Modify and save the CreateDmsSeMongoRfc.json file. For example, you can replace the contents with something like this:

```
{
"ChangeTypeVersion":    "1.0",
"ChangeTypeId":         "ct-2hxcllf1b4ey0",
"Title":                "DMS_Source_MongoDB"
}
```

5. Create the RFC, specifying the execution parameters file and the CreateDmsSeMongoRfc file:

```
aws amscm create-rfc --cli-input-json file://CreateDmsSeMongoRfc.json --execution-
parameters file://CreateDmsSeMongoParams.json
```

   You receive the ID of the new RFC in the response and can use it to submit and monitor the RFC. Until you submit it, the RFC remains in the editing state and does not start.

Tips

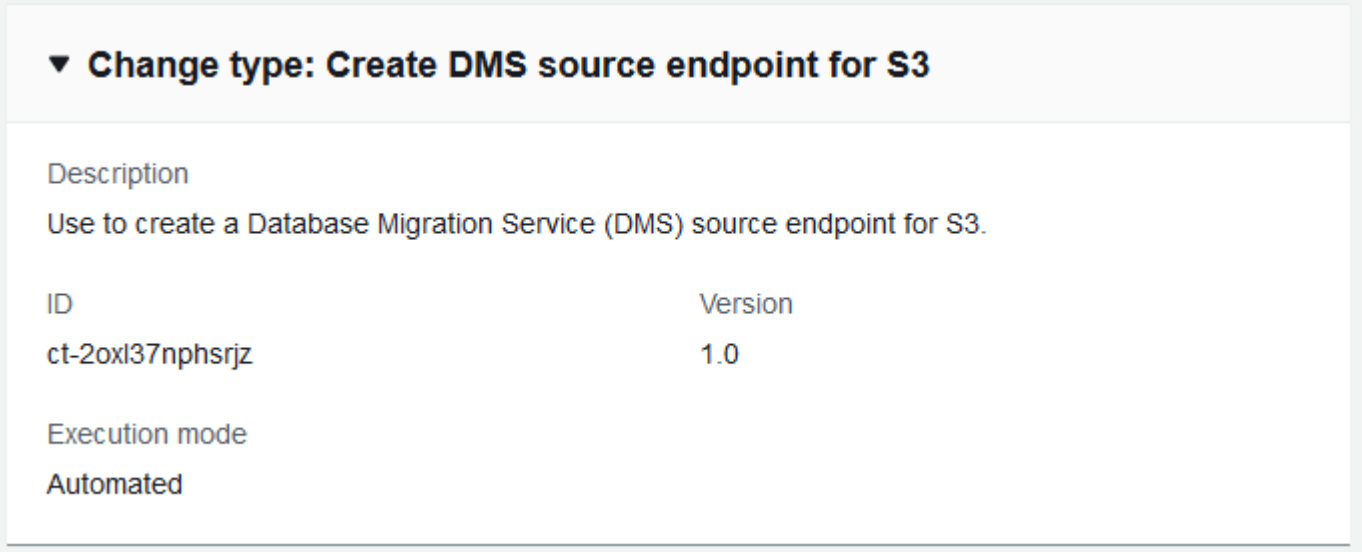
> **Note**
>
> You can add up to 50 tags, but to do so you must enable the **Additional configuration** view.

AMS DMS can use Mongo or any Relational Database Service (RDS) as a source endpoint. For an S3 source endpoint, see DMS source endpoint for S3: creating.

DMS source endpoint for S3: creating

Creating a DMS S3 Source Endpoint with the Console

Screenshot of this change type in the AMS console:



How it works:

1. Navigate to the **Create RFC** page: In the left navigation pane of the AMS console click **RFCs** to open the RFCs list page, and then click **Create RFC**.
2. Choose a popular change type (CT) in the default **Browse change types** view, or select a CT in the **Choose by category** view.
   - **Browse by change type**: You can click on a popular CT in the **Quick create** area to immediately open the **Run RFC** page. Note that you cannot choose an older CT version with quick create.

     To sort CTs, use the **All change types** area in either the **Card** or **Table** view. In either view, select a CT and then click **Create RFC** to open the **Run RFC** page. If applicable, a **Create with older version** option appears next to the **Create RFC** button.
   - **Choose by category**: Select a category, subcategory, item, and operation and the CT details box opens with an option to **Create with older version** if applicable. Click **Create RFC** to open the **Run RFC** page.
3. On the **Run RFC** page, open the CT name area to see the CT details box. A **Subject** is required (this is filled in for you if you choose your CT in the **Browse change types** view). Open the **Additional configuration** area to add information about the RFC.

   In the **Execution configuration** area, use available drop-down lists or enter values for the required parameters. To configure optional execution parameters, open the **Additional configuration** area.

4. When finished, click **Run**. If there are no errors, the **RFC successfully created** page displays with the submitted RFC details, and the initial **Run output**.
5. Open the **Run parameters** area to see the configurations you submitted. Refresh the page to update the RFC execution status. Optionally, cancel the RFC or create a copy of it with the options at the top of the page.

Creating a DMS S3 Source Endpoint with the CLI

How it works:

1. Use either the Inline Create (you issue a `create-rfc` command with all RFC and execution parameters included), or Template Create (you create two JSON files, one for the RFC parameters and one for the execution parameters) and issue the `create-rfc` command with the two files as input. Both methods are described here.
2. Submit the RFC: `aws amscm submit-rfc --rfc-id` *`ID`* command with the returned RFC ID.

   Monitor the RFC: `aws amscm get-rfc --rfc-id` *`ID`* command.

To check the change type version, use this command:

```
aws amscm list-change-type-version-summaries --filter
 Attribute=ChangeTypeId,Value=CT_ID
```

> **Note**
>
> You can use any `CreateRfc` parameters with any RFC whether or not they are part of the schema for the change type. For example, to get notifications when the RFC status changes, add this line, `--notification "{\"Email\": {\"EmailRecipients \" : [\"email@example.com\"]}}"` to the RFC parameters part of the request (not the execution parameters). For a list of all CreateRfc parameters, see the AMS Change Management API Reference.

INLINE CREATE:

Issue the create RFC command with execution parameters provided inline (escape quotes when providing execution parameters inline), and then submit the returned RFC ID. For example, you can replace the contents with something like this:

```
aws --profile saml --region us-east-1 amscm create-rfc --title "S3DMSSourceEndpoint" --
aws-account-id ACCOUNT-ID --change-type-id ct-2oxl37nphsrjz --change-type-version 1.0
 --execution-parameters "{\"Description\":\"TestS3DMS-SE\",\"VpcId\":\"VPC-ID\",\"Name
\":\"S3-DMS-SE\",\"Parameters\":{\"EngineName\":\"s3\",\"S3BucketName\":\"amzn-s3-
demo-bucket\",\"S3ExternalTableDefinition\":\"{\\\"TableCount\\\":\\\"1\\\",\\\"Tables
\\\":[{\\\"TableName\\\":\\\"employee\\\",\\\"TablePath\\\":\\\"hr/employee/\\\",\\
\"TableOwner\\\":\\\"hr\\\",\\\"TableColumns\\\":[{\\\"ColumnName\\\":\\\"Id\\\",\\
\"ColumnType\\\":\\\"INT8\\\",\\\"ColumnNullable\\\":\\\"false\\\",\\\"ColumnIsPk\\\":
\\\"true\\\"},{\\\"ColumnName\\\":\\\"LastName\\\",\\\"ColumnType\\\":\\\"STRING\\\",
\\\"ColumnLength\\\":\\\"20\\\"},{\\\"ColumnName\\\":\\\"FirstName\\\",\\\"ColumnType
\\\":\\\"STRING\\\",\\\"ColumnLength\\\":\\\"30\\\"},{\\\"ColumnName\\\":\\\"HireDate\
\\",\\\"ColumnType\\\":\\\"DATETIME\\\"},{\\\"ColumnName\\\":\\\"OfficeLocation\\\",\\
\"ColumnType\\\":\\\"STRING\\\",\\\"ColumnLength\\\":\\\"20\\\"}],\\\"TableColumnsTotal
\\\":\\\"5\\\"}]}\",\"S3ServiceAccessRoleArn\":\"arn:aws:iam::123456789101:role/ams-
ops-ct-authors-dms-s3-test-role\"},\"TimeoutInMinutes\":60,\"StackTemplateId\":\"stm-
pud4ghhkp7395n9bc\"}"
```

TEMPLATE CREATE:

1. Output the execution parameters for this change type to a JSON file named CreateDmsSeS3Params.json.

   ```
   aws amscm get-change-type-version --change-type-id "ct-2oxl37nphsrjz" --query
    "ChangeTypeVersion.ExecutionInputSchema" --output text > CreateDmsSeS3Params.json
   ```

2. Modify and save the execution parameters JSON file. For example, you can replace the contents with something like this:

   ```
   {
   "Description":          "TestS3DMS-SE",
   "VpcId":                "VPC_ID",
   "Name":                 "S3-DMS-SE",
   "StackTemplateId":      "stm-pud4ghhkp7395n9bc",
   "TimeoutInMinutes":     60,
   "Parameters":   {
       "EngineName":               "s3",
       "S3BucketName":              "amzn-s3-demo-bucket",
       "S3ExternalTableDefinition":  "BUCKET-NAME",
   ```

```
    {"TableCount":                "1",
      "Tables":[{"TableName":"employee","TablePath":"hr/
employee/","TableOwner":"hr","TableColumns":
[{"ColumnName":"Id","ColumnType":"INT8","ColumnNullable":"false","ColumnIsPk":"true"},
{"ColumnName":"LastName","ColumnType":"STRING","ColumnLength":"20"},
{"ColumnName":"FirstName","ColumnType":"STRING","ColumnLength":"30"},
{"ColumnName":"HireDate","ColumnType":"DATETIME"},
{"ColumnName":"OfficeLocation","ColumnType":"STRING","ColumnLength":"20"}],"TableColumnsTot
    "S3ServiceAccessRoleArn":      "arn:aws:iam::123456789101:role/ams-ops-ct-
authors-dms-s3-test-role",
      }
}
```

3. Output the JSON template to a file in your current folder; this example names it CreateDmsSeS3Rfc.json:

```
aws amscm create-rfc --generate-cli-skeleton > CreateDmsSeS3Rfc.json
```

4. Modify and save the CreateDmsSeS3Rfc.json file. For example, you can replace the contents with something like this:

```
{
"ChangeTypeVersion":    "1.0",
"ChangeTypeId":         "ct-2oxl37nphsrjz",
"Title":                "DMS_Source_S3"
}
```

5. Create the RFC, specifying the execution parameters file and the CreateDmsSeS3Rfc file:

```
aws amscm create-rfc --cli-input-json file://CreateDmsSeS3Rfc.json --execution-
parameters file://CreateDmsSeS3Params.json
```

You receive the ID of the new RFC in the response and can use it to submit and monitor the RFC. Until you submit it, the RFC remains in the editing state and does not start.

Tips

> **Note**
>
> You can add up to 50 tags, but to do so you must enable the **Additional configuration** view.

AMS DMS can use S3 or any Relational Database Service (RDS) source endpoint. For a Mongo DB source endpoint, see DMS source endpoint for MongoDB: Creating.

4: AWS DMS target endpoint: Create, create for S3

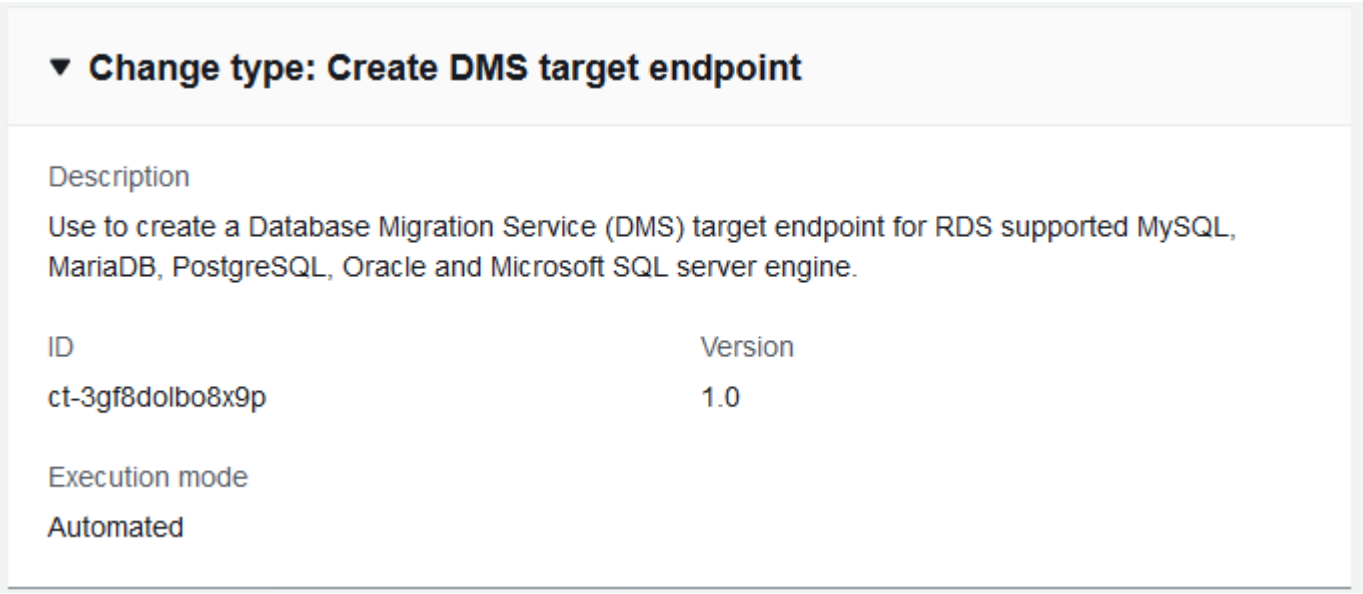
You can use the AMS console or API/CLI to create an AMS DMS target endpoint for various databases, we provide two examples.

DMS target endpoint: creating

AMS DMS can use S3 or any Relational Database Service (RDS) with MySQL, MariaDB, Oracle, Postgresql, or Microsoft SQL as a target endpoint.

Creating a DMS Target Endpoint with the Console

Screenshot of this change type in the AMS console:



How it works:

1. Navigate to the **Create RFC** page: In the left navigation pane of the AMS console click **RFCs** to open the RFCs list page, and then click **Create RFC**.
2. Choose a popular change type (CT) in the default **Browse change types** view, or select a CT in the **Choose by category** view.
   - **Browse by change type**: You can click on a popular CT in the **Quick create** area to immediately open the **Run RFC** page. Note that you cannot choose an older CT version with quick create.

     To sort CTs, use the **All change types** area in either the **Card** or **Table** view. In either view, select a CT and then click **Create RFC** to open the **Run RFC** page. If applicable, a **Create with older version** option appears next to the **Create RFC** button.
   - **Choose by category**: Select a category, subcategory, item, and operation and the CT details box opens with an option to **Create with older version** if applicable. Click **Create RFC** to open the **Run RFC** page.
3. On the **Run RFC** page, open the CT name area to see the CT details box. A **Subject** is required (this is filled in for you if you choose your CT in the **Browse change types** view). Open the **Additional configuration** area to add information about the RFC.

   In the **Execution configuration** area, use available drop-down lists or enter values for the required parameters. To configure optional execution parameters, open the **Additional configuration** area.
4. When finished, click **Run**. If there are no errors, the **RFC successfully created** page displays with the submitted RFC details, and the initial **Run output**.
5. Open the **Run parameters** area to see the configurations you submitted. Refresh the page to update the RFC execution status. Optionally, cancel the RFC or create a copy of it with the options at the top of the page.

Creating a DMS Target Endpoint with the CLI

How it works:

1. Use either the Inline Create (you issue a `create-rfc` command with all RFC and execution parameters included), or Template Create (you create two JSON files, one for the RFC parameters and one for the execution parameters) and issue the `create-rfc` command with the two files as input. Both methods are described here.
2. Submit the RFC: `aws amscm submit-rfc --rfc-id` *`ID`* command with the returned RFC ID.

Monitor the RFC: `aws amscm get-rfc --rfc-id ID` command.

To check the change type version, use this command:

```
aws amscm list-change-type-version-summaries --filter
 Attribute=ChangeTypeId,Value=CT_ID
```

Note

You can use any `CreateRfc` parameters with any RFC whether or not they are part of the schema for the change type. For example, to get notifications when the RFC status changes, add this line, `--notification "{\"Email\": {\"EmailRecipients\" : [\"email@example.com\"]}}"` to the RFC parameters part of the request (not the execution parameters). For a list of all CreateRfc parameters, see the AMS Change Management API Reference.

INLINE CREATE:

Issue the create RFC command with execution parameters provided inline (escape quotes when providing execution parameters inline), and then submit the returned RFC ID. For example, you can replace the contents with something like this:

```
aws --profile saml --region us-east-1 amscm create-rfc --change-type-id
 "ct-3gf8dolbo8x9p" --change-type-version "1.0" --title "TestDMSTargetEndpoint" --
execution-parameters "{\"Description\":\"TestTE\",\"VpcId\":\"VPC-ID\",\"Name\":
\"TE-NAME\",\"StackTemplateId\":\"stm-knghtmmgefafdq89u\",\"TimeoutInMinutes\":60,
\"Parameters\":{\"EngineName\":\"mysql\",\"Password\":\"testpw123\",\"Port\":\"3306\",
\"ServerName\":\"mytestdb.d5fga0rf2wpi.ap-southeast-2.rds.amazonaws.com\",\"Username\":
\"USERNAME\"}}"
```

TEMPLATE CREATE:

1. Output the execution parameters for this change type to a JSON file named CreateDmsTeParams.json.

   ```
   aws amscm get-change-type-version --change-type-id "ct-3gf8dolbo8x9p" --query
    "ChangeTypeVersion.ExecutionInputSchema" --output text > CreateDmsTeParams.json
   ```

2. Modify and save the execution parameters JSON file. For example, you can replace the contents with something like this:

```
{
"Description":          "TestTE",
"VpcId":                "VPC_ID",
"StackTemplateId":      "stm-knghtmmgefafdq89u",
"Name":                 "TE-NAME",
"TimeoutInMinutes":     60,
"Parameters":   {
    "EngineName":       "mysql",
    "ServerName":       "sql.db.example.com",
    "Port":             "3306",
    "Username":         "DB-USER",
    "Password":         "DB-PW",}
    }
}
```

3. Output the JSON template to a file in your current folder; this example names it CreateDmsTeRfc.json:

```
aws amscm create-rfc --generate-cli-skeleton > CreateDmsTeRfc.json
```

4. Modify and save the CreateDmsTeRfc.json file. For example, you can replace the contents with something like this:

```
{
"ChangeTypeVersion":    "1.0",
"ChangeTypeId":         "ct-3gf8dolbo8x9p",
"Title":                "DB-DMS-Target-Endpoint"
}
```

5. Create the RFC, specifying the execution parameters file and the CreateDmsTeRfc file:

```
aws amscm create-rfc --cli-input-json file://CreateDmsTeRfc.json --execution-
parameters file://CreateDmsTeParams.json
```

   You receive the ID of the new RFC in the response and can use it to submit and monitor the RFC. Until you submit it, the RFC remains in the editing state and does not start.

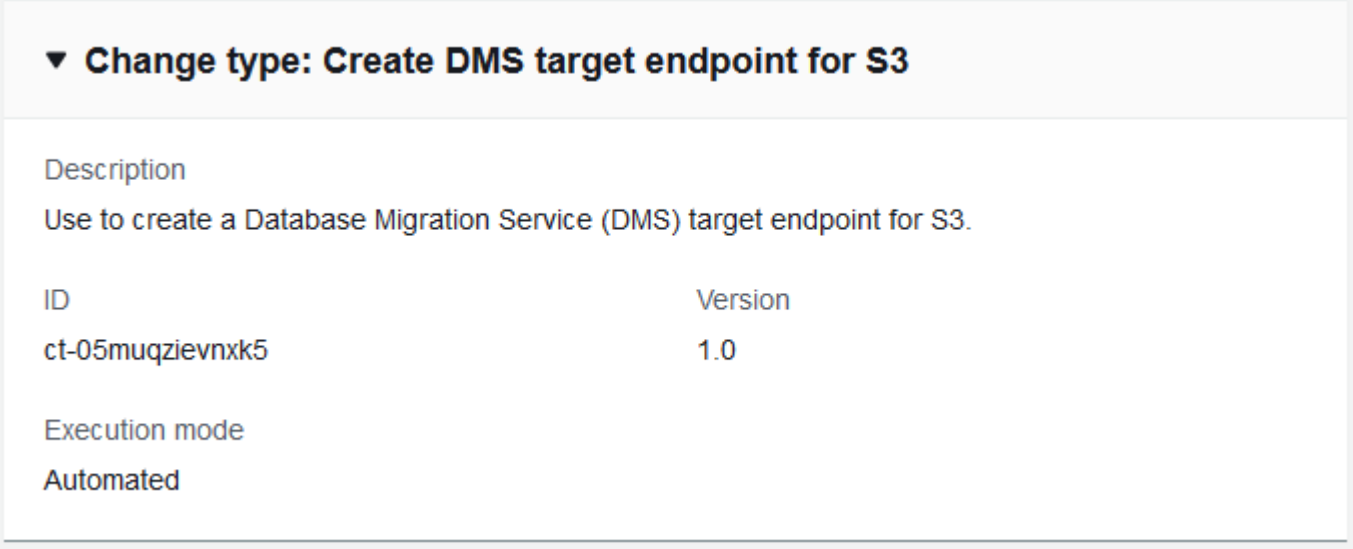
Tips

- This change type is now at version 2.0.
- AMS DMS can use S3 or any Relational Database Service (RDS) with MySQL, MariaDB, Oracle, Postgresql, or Microsoft SQL as a target endpoint. For an S3 target endpoint, see DMS target endpoint for S3: creating.
- For more information, see Targets for Data Migration.
- You can add up to 50 tags, but to do so you must enable the **Additional configuration** view.

DMS target endpoint for S3: creating

Creating a DMS S3 Target Endpoint with the Console

Screenshot of this change type in the AMS console:



How it works:

1. Navigate to the **Create RFC** page: In the left navigation pane of the AMS console click **RFCs** to open the RFCs list page, and then click **Create RFC**.
2. Choose a popular change type (CT) in the default **Browse change types** view, or select a CT in the **Choose by category** view.
   - **Browse by change type**: You can click on a popular CT in the **Quick create** area to immediately open the **Run RFC** page. Note that you cannot choose an older CT version with quick create.

To sort CTs, use the **All change types** area in either the **Card** or **Table** view. In either view, select a CT and then click **Create RFC** to open the **Run RFC** page. If applicable, a **Create with older version** option appears next to the **Create RFC** button.

- **Choose by category**: Select a category, subcategory, item, and operation and the CT details box opens with an option to **Create with older version** if applicable. Click **Create RFC** to open the **Run RFC** page.

3. On the **Run RFC** page, open the CT name area to see the CT details box. A **Subject** is required (this is filled in for you if you choose your CT in the **Browse change types** view). Open the **Additional configuration** area to add information about the RFC.

   In the **Execution configuration** area, use available drop-down lists or enter values for the required parameters. To configure optional execution parameters, open the **Additional configuration** area.

4. When finished, click **Run**. If there are no errors, the **RFC successfully created** page displays with the submitted RFC details, and the initial **Run output**.
5. Open the **Run parameters** area to see the configurations you submitted. Refresh the page to update the RFC execution status. Optionally, cancel the RFC or create a copy of it with the options at the top of the page.

Creating a DMS S3 Target Endpoint with the CLI

How it works:

1. Use either the Inline Create (you issue a `create-rfc` command with all RFC and execution parameters included), or Template Create (you create two JSON files, one for the RFC parameters and one for the execution parameters) and issue the `create-rfc` command with the two files as input. Both methods are described here.
2. Submit the RFC: `aws amscm submit-rfc --rfc-id` *`ID`* command with the returned RFC ID.

   Monitor the RFC: `aws amscm get-rfc --rfc-id` *`ID`* command.

To check the change type version, use this command:

```
aws amscm list-change-type-version-summaries --filter
 Attribute=ChangeTypeId,Value=CT_ID
```

> **Note**
>
> You can use any `CreateRfc` parameters with any RFC whether or not they are part of the schema for the change type. For example, to get notifications when the RFC status changes, add this line, `--notification "{\"Email\": {\"EmailRecipients\" : [\"email@example.com\"]}}"` to the RFC parameters part of the request (not the execution parameters). For a list of all CreateRfc parameters, see the AMS Change Management API Reference.

INLINE CREATE:

Issue the create RFC command with execution parameters provided inline (escape quotes when providing execution parameters inline), and then submit the returned RFC ID. For example, you can replace the contents with something like this:

```
aws --profile saml --region us-east-1 amscm create-rfc --change-type-id
 "ct-05muqzievnxk5" --change-type-version "1.0" --title "TestDMSTargetEndpointS3"
 --execution-parameters "{\"Description\":\"TestS3TE\",\"VpcId\":\"VPC-ID\",\"Name
\":\"S3TE-NAME\",\"StackTemplateId\":\"stm-knghtmmgefafdq89u\",\"TimeoutInMinutes
\":60,\"Parameters\":{\"EngineName\":\"s3\",\"S3BucketName\":\"amzn-s3-demo-bucket\",
\"S3ServiceAccessRoleArn\":\"arn:aws:iam::123456789123:role/my-s3-role\"}}"
```

TEMPLATE CREATE:

1. Output the execution parameters for this change type to a JSON file; this example names it CreateDmsTeS3Params.json:

   ```
   aws amscm get-change-type-version --change-type-id "ct-05muqzievnxk5" --query
    "ChangeTypeVersion.ExecutionInputSchema" --output text > CreateDmsTeS3Params.json
   ```

2. Modify and save the execution parameters CreateDmsTeS3Params.json file. For example, you can replace the contents with something like this:

   ```
   {
   "Description":          "TestS3DMS-TE",
   "VpcId":                "VPC_ID",
   "StackTemplateId":      "stm-knghtmmgefafdq89u",
   "Name":                 "DMS-S3-TE",
   "TimeoutInMinutes":     60,
   ```

```
"Parameters":   {
    "EngineName":       "s3",
    "S3BucketName":      "amzn-s3-demo-bucket",
    "S3ServiceAccessRoleArn":       "arn:aws:iam::123456789101:role/ams-ops-ct-
authors-dms-s3-test-role"
      }
}
```

3. Output the JSON template to a file in your current folder; this example names it CreateDmsTeS3Rfc.json:

```
aws amscm create-rfc --generate-cli-skeleton > CreateDmsTeS3Rfc.json
```

4. Modify and save the CreateDmsTeS3Rfc.json file. For example, you can replace the contents with something like this:

```
{
"ChangeTypeVersion":    "1.0",
"ChangeTypeId":         "ct-05muqzievnxk5",
"Title":                "DMS_Target_S3"
}
```

5. Create the RFC, specifying the execution parameters file and the CreateDmsTeS3Rfc file:

```
aws amscm create-rfc --cli-input-json file://CreateDmsTeS3Rfc.json --execution-
parameters file://CreateDmsTeS3Params.json
```

You receive the ID of the new RFC in the response and can use it to submit and monitor the RFC. Until you submit it, the RFC remains in the editing state and does not start.

Tips

> **Note**
>
> You can add up to 50 tags, but to do so you must enable the **Additional configuration** view.

AMS provides a separate change type for creating a target endpoint for S3. For more information, see Using Amazon S3 as a Target for AWS Database Migration Service and Extra Connection Attributes When Using Amazon S3 as a Target for AWS DMS.

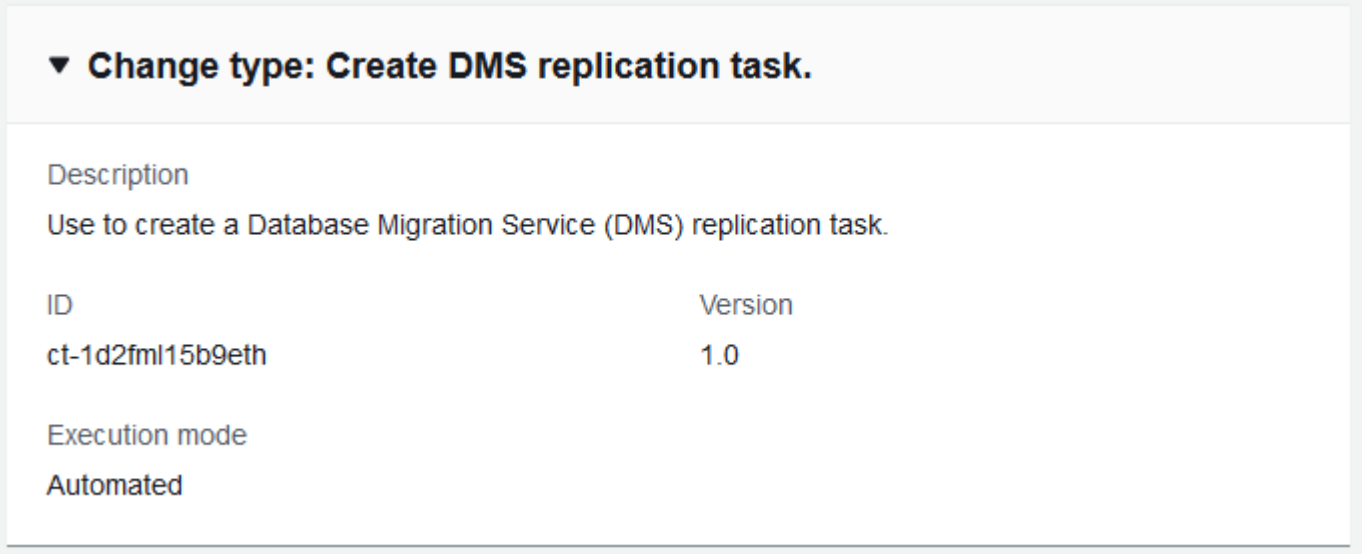
5: AWS DMS replication task: Create

You can use the AMS console or API/CLI to create an AMS AWS DMS replication task.

Create AWS DMS replication task

Creating a AWS DMS Replication Task with the Console

Screenshot of this change type in the AMS console:



How it works:

1. Navigate to the **Create RFC** page: In the left navigation pane of the AMS console click **RFCs** to open the RFCs list page, and then click **Create RFC**.
2. Choose a popular change type (CT) in the default **Browse change types** view, or select a CT in the **Choose by category** view.
   - **Browse by change type**: You can click on a popular CT in the **Quick create** area to immediately open the **Run RFC** page. Note that you cannot choose an older CT version with quick create.

     To sort CTs, use the **All change types** area in either the **Card** or **Table** view. In either view, select a CT and then click **Create RFC** to open the **Run RFC** page. If applicable, a **Create with older version** option appears next to the **Create RFC** button.

- **Choose by category**: Select a category, subcategory, item, and operation and the CT details box opens with an option to **Create with older version** if applicable. Click **Create RFC** to open the **Run RFC** page.

3. On the **Run RFC** page, open the CT name area to see the CT details box. A **Subject** is required (this is filled in for you if you choose your CT in the **Browse change types** view). Open the **Additional configuration** area to add information about the RFC.

   In the **Execution configuration** area, use available drop-down lists or enter values for the required parameters. To configure optional execution parameters, open the **Additional configuration** area.
4. When finished, click **Run**. If there are no errors, the **RFC successfully created** page displays with the submitted RFC details, and the initial **Run output**.
5. Open the **Run parameters** area to see the configurations you submitted. Refresh the page to update the RFC execution status. Optionally, cancel the RFC or create a copy of it with the options at the top of the page.

Creating a AWS DMS Replication Task with the CLI

How it works:

1. Use either the Inline Create (you issue a `create-rfc` command with all RFC and execution parameters included), or Template Create (you create two JSON files, one for the RFC parameters and one for the execution parameters) and issue the `create-rfc` command with the two files as input. Both methods are described here.
2. Submit the RFC: `aws amscm submit-rfc --rfc-id` *`ID`* command with the returned RFC ID.

   Monitor the RFC: `aws amscm get-rfc --rfc-id` *`ID`* command.

To check the change type version, use this command:

```
aws amscm list-change-type-version-summaries --filter
 Attribute=ChangeTypeId,Value=CT_ID
```

> **Note**
>
> You can use any `CreateRfc` parameters with any RFC whether or not they are part of the schema for the change type. For example, to get notifications when the RFC status

changes, add this line, `--notification "{\"Email\": {\"EmailRecipients\" : [\"email@example.com\"]}}"` to the RFC parameters part of the request (not the execution parameters). For a list of all CreateRfc parameters, see the AMS Change Management API Reference.

INLINE CREATE:

Issue the create RFC command with execution parameters provided inline (escape quotes when providing execution parameters inline), and then submit the returned RFC ID. For example, you can replace the contents with something like this:

```
aws --profile saml --region us-east-1 amscm create-rfc --change-type-id
 "ct-1d2fml15b9eth" --change-type-version "1.0" --title "TestDMSRepTask" --
execution-parameters "{\"Description\":\"TestRepTask\",\"VpcId\":\"VPC-ID\",\"Name
\":\"DMSRepTask\",\"Parameters\":{\"CdcStartTime\":\1533776569\"MigrationType\":
\"full-load\",\"ReplicationInstanceArn\":\"REP_INSTANCE_ARN\",\"SourceEndpointArn
\":\"SOURCE_ENDPOINT_ARN\",\"TableMappings\":\"{\\\"rules\\\": [{\\\"rule-type
\\\": \\\"selection\\\",\\\"rule-id\\\": \\\"1\\\",\\\"rule-name\\\": \\\"1\\
\",\\\"object-locator\\\": {\\\"schema-name\\\": \\\"Test\\\",\\\"table-name\\
\": \\\"%\\\"}, \\\"rule-action\\\": \\\"include\\\"}] }\",\"TargetEndpointArn
\":\"TARGET_ENDPOINT_ARN\"},\"StackTemplateId\":\"stm-eos7uq0usnmeggdet\",
\"TimeoutInMinutes\":60}"
```

TEMPLATE CREATE:

1. Output the execution parameters for this change type to a JSON file; this example names it CreateDmsRtParams.json:

   ```
   aws amscm get-change-type-version --change-type-id "ct-1d2fml15b9eth" --query
    "ChangeTypeVersion.ExecutionInputSchema" --output text > CreateDmsRtParams.json
   ```

2. Modify and save the execution parameters JSON file. For example, you can replace the contents with something like this:

   ```
   {
   "Description":          "DMSTestRepTask",
   "VpcId":                "VPC_ID",
   "StackTemplateId":      "stm-eos7uq0usnmeggdet",
   "Name":                 "Test DMS RT",
   "TimeoutInMinutes":     60,
   ```

```
"Parameters":   {
    "CdcStartTime":           "1533776569",
    "MigrationType":          "full-load",
    "ReplicationInstanceArn": "REP_INSTANCE_ARN",
    "SourceEndpointArn":      "SOURCE_ENDPOINT_ARN",
    "TargetEndpointArn":      "TARGET_ENDPOINT_ARN"
    "TableMappings":          {"rules": [{"rule-type": "selection","rule-id":
 "1","rule-name": "1","object-locator": {"schema-name": "Test","table-name": "%"},
 "rule-action": "include"}] }",
    }
}
```

3. Output the JSON template to a file in your current folder; this example names it CreateDmsRtRfc.json:

```
aws amscm create-rfc --generate-cli-skeleton > CreateDmsRtRfc.json
```

4. Modify and save the CreateDmsRtRfc.json file. For example, you can replace the contents with something like this:

```
{
"ChangeTypeVersion":    "1.0",
"ChangeTypeId":         "ct-1d2fml15b9eth",
"Title":                "DMS-RI-Create-RFC"
}
```

5. Create the RFC, specifying the execution parameters file and the CreateDmsRtRfc file:

```
aws amscm create-rfc --cli-input-json file://CreateDmsRtRfc.json --execution-
parameters file://CreateDmsRtParams.json
```

   You receive the ID of the new RFC in the response and can use it to submit and monitor the RFC. Until you submit it, the RFC remains in the editing state and does not start.

Tips

You can create a AWS DMS task that captures three different types of changes or data. For more information, see Working with AWS DMS Tasks, Creating a Task, and Creating Tasks for Ongoing Replication Using AWS DMS.

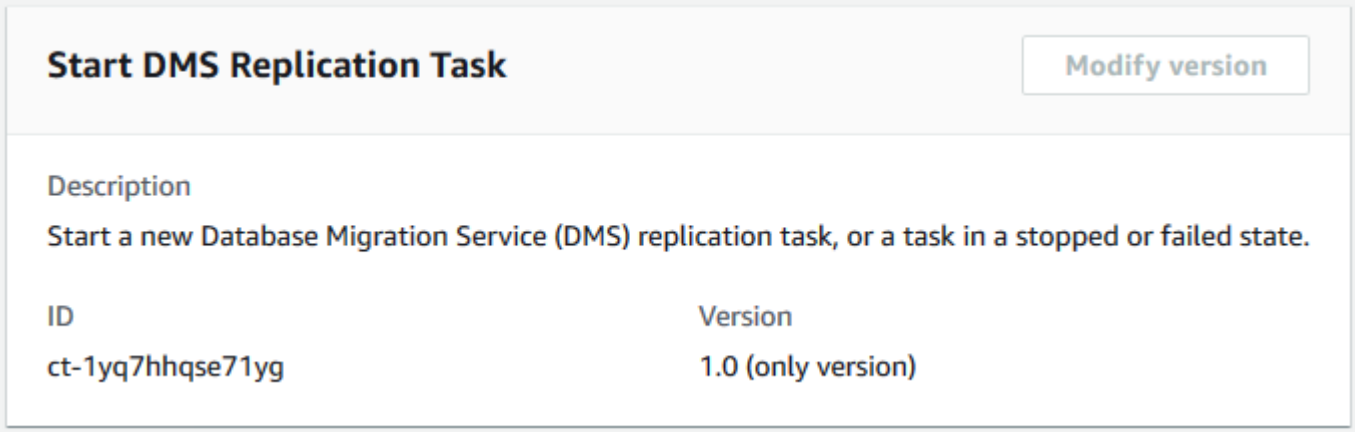
AWS DMS management

AWS DMS management examples.

Start AWS DMS replication task

Starting a AWS DMS replication task with the Console

Screenshot of this change type in the AMS console:



How it works:

1. Navigate to the **Create RFC** page: In the left navigation pane of the AMS console click **RFCs** to open the RFCs list page, and then click **Create RFC**.
2. Choose a popular change type (CT) in the default **Browse change types** view, or select a CT in the **Choose by category** view.
   - **Browse by change type**: You can click on a popular CT in the **Quick create** area to immediately open the **Run RFC** page. Note that you cannot choose an older CT version with quick create.

     To sort CTs, use the **All change types** area in either the **Card** or **Table** view. In either view, select a CT and then click **Create RFC** to open the **Run RFC** page. If applicable, a **Create with older version** option appears next to the **Create RFC** button.
   - **Choose by category**: Select a category, subcategory, item, and operation and the CT details box opens with an option to **Create with older version** if applicable. Click **Create RFC** to open the **Run RFC** page.
3. On the **Run RFC** page, open the CT name area to see the CT details box. A **Subject** is required (this is filled in for you if you choose your CT in the **Browse change types** view). Open the **Additional configuration** area to add information about the RFC.

In the **Execution configuration** area, use available drop-down lists or enter values for the required parameters. To configure optional execution parameters, open the **Additional configuration** area.

4. When finished, click **Run**. If there are no errors, the **RFC successfully created** page displays with the submitted RFC details, and the initial **Run output**.
5. Open the **Run parameters** area to see the configurations you submitted. Refresh the page to update the RFC execution status. Optionally, cancel the RFC or create a copy of it with the options at the top of the page.

Starting a AWS DMS replication task with the CLI

How it works:

1. Use either the Inline Create (you issue a `create-rfc` command with all RFC and execution parameters included), or Template Create (you create two JSON files, one for the RFC parameters and one for the execution parameters) and issue the `create-rfc` command with the two files as input. Both methods are described here.
2. Submit the RFC: `aws amscm submit-rfc --rfc-id` *`ID`* command with the returned RFC ID.

   Monitor the RFC: `aws amscm get-rfc --rfc-id` *`ID`* command.

To check the change type version, use this command:

```
aws amscm list-change-type-version-summaries --filter
 Attribute=ChangeTypeId,Value=CT_ID
```

> **Note**
>
> You can use any `CreateRfc` parameters with any RFC whether or not they are part of the schema for the change type. For example, to get notifications when the RFC status changes, add this line, `--notification "{\"Email\": {\"EmailRecipients\" : [\"email@example.com\"]}}"` to the RFC parameters part of the request (not the execution parameters). For a list of all CreateRfc parameters, see the AMS Change Management API Reference.

INLINE CREATE:

Issue the create RFC command with execution parameters provided inline (escape quotes when providing execution parameters inline), and then submit the returned RFC ID. For example, you can replace the contents with something like this:

```
aws amscm create-rfc --change-type-id "ct-1yq7hhqse71yg" --change-type-version
 "1.0" --title "Start DMS Replication Task" --execution-parameters "{\"DocumentName
\":\"AWSManagedServices-StartDmsTask\",\"Region\":\"us-east-1\",\"Parameters\":
{\"ReplicationTaskArn\":[\"TASK_ARN\"],\"StartReplicationTaskType\":[\"start-
replication\"],\"CdcStartPosition\":[\"\"],\"CdcStopPosition\":[\"\"]}}"
```

TEMPLATE CREATE:

1. Output the execution parameters for this change type to a JSON file; this example names it StartDmsRtParams.json:

   ```
   aws amscm get-change-type-version --change-type-id "ct-1yq7hhqse71yg" --query
    "ChangeTypeVersion.ExecutionInputSchema" --output text > StartDmsRtParams.json
   ```

2. Modify and save the execution parameters JSON file. For example, you can replace the contents with something like this:

   ```
   {
     "DocumentName": "AWSManagedServices-StartDmsTask",
     "Region": "us-east-1",
     "Parameters": {
         "ReplicationTaskArn": [
           "TASK_ARN"
         ],
         "StartReplicationTaskType": [
           "start-replication"
         ],
         "CdcStartPosition": [
           ""
         ],
         "CdcStopPosition": [
           ""
         ]
     }
   }
   ```

3. Output the JSON template to a file in your current folder; this example names it StartDmsRtRfc.json:

```
aws amscm create-rfc --generate-cli-skeleton > StartDmsRtRfc.json
```

4. Modify and save the StartDmsRtRfc.json file. For example, you can replace the contents with something like this:

```
{
  "ChangeTypeId": "ct-1yq7hhqse71yg",
  "ChangeTypeVersion": "1.0",
  "Title": "Start DMS Replication Task"
}
```

5. Create the RFC, specifying the execution parameters file and the StartDmsRtRfc file:

```
aws amscm create-rfc --cli-input-json file://StartDmsRtRfc.json --execution-
parameters file://StartDmsRtParams.json
```

   You receive the ID of the new RFC in the response and can use it to submit and monitor the RFC. Until you submit it, the RFC remains in the editing state and does not start.

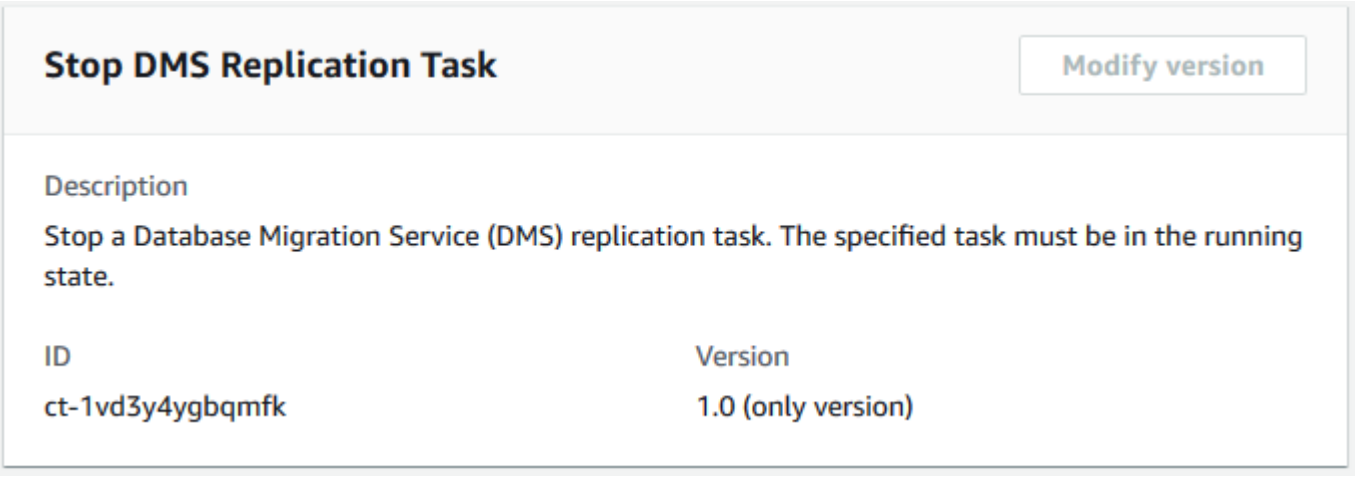
Tips

You can start a AWS DMS replication task, using the AMS console or the AMS API/CLI. For more information, see Working with AWS DMS Tasks.

Stop AWS DMS replication task

Stopping a AWS DMS replication task with the Console

Screenshot of this change type in the AMS console:



How it works:

1. Navigate to the **Create RFC** page: In the left navigation pane of the AMS console click **RFCs** to open the RFCs list page, and then click **Create RFC**.
2. Choose a popular change type (CT) in the default **Browse change types** view, or select a CT in the **Choose by category** view.
   - **Browse by change type**: You can click on a popular CT in the **Quick create** area to immediately open the **Run RFC** page. Note that you cannot choose an older CT version with quick create.

     To sort CTs, use the **All change types** area in either the **Card** or **Table** view. In either view, select a CT and then click **Create RFC** to open the **Run RFC** page. If applicable, a **Create with older version** option appears next to the **Create RFC** button.
   - **Choose by category**: Select a category, subcategory, item, and operation and the CT details box opens with an option to **Create with older version** if applicable. Click **Create RFC** to open the **Run RFC** page.
3. On the **Run RFC** page, open the CT name area to see the CT details box. A **Subject** is required (this is filled in for you if you choose your CT in the **Browse change types** view). Open the **Additional configuration** area to add information about the RFC.

   In the **Execution configuration** area, use available drop-down lists or enter values for the required parameters. To configure optional execution parameters, open the **Additional configuration** area.
4. When finished, click **Run**. If there are no errors, the **RFC successfully created** page displays with the submitted RFC details, and the initial **Run output**.

5. Open the **Run parameters** area to see the configurations you submitted. Refresh the page to update the RFC execution status. Optionally, cancel the RFC or create a copy of it with the options at the top of the page.

Stopping a AWS DMS replication task with the CLI

How it works:

1. Use either the Inline Create (you issue a `create-rfc` command with all RFC and execution parameters included), or Template Create (you create two JSON files, one for the RFC parameters and one for the execution parameters) and issue the `create-rfc` command with the two files as input. Both methods are described here.
2. Submit the RFC: `aws amscm submit-rfc --rfc-id` *`ID`* command with the returned RFC ID.

   Monitor the RFC: `aws amscm get-rfc --rfc-id` *`ID`* command.

To check the change type version, use this command:

```
aws amscm list-change-type-version-summaries --filter
 Attribute=ChangeTypeId,Value=CT_ID
```

> **Note**
>
> You can use any `CreateRfc` parameters with any RFC whether or not they are part of the schema for the change type. For example, to get notifications when the RFC status changes, add this line, `--notification "{\"Email\": {\"EmailRecipients \" : [\"email@example.com\"]}}"` to the RFC parameters part of the request (not the execution parameters). For a list of all CreateRfc parameters, see the AMS Change Management API Reference.

INLINE CREATE:

Issue the create RFC command with execution parameters provided inline (escape quotes when providing execution parameters inline), and then submit the returned RFC ID. For example, you can replace the contents with something like this:

```
aws amscm create-rfc --change-type-id "ct-1vd3y4ygbqmfk" --change-type-version
 "1.0" --title "Stop DMS Replication Task" --execution-parameters "{\"DocumentName
\":\"AWSManagedServices-StopDmsTask\",\"Region\":\"us-east-1\",\"Parameters\":
{\"ReplicationTaskArn\":[\"TASK_ARN\"]}}"
```

TEMPLATE CREATE:

1. Output the execution parameters for this change type to a JSON file; this example names it StopDmsRtParams.json:

   ```
   aws amscm get-change-type-version --change-type-id "ct-1vd3y4ygbqmfk" --query
    "ChangeTypeVersion.ExecutionInputSchema" --output text > StopDmsRtParams.json
   ```

2. Modify and save the execution parameters JSON file. For example, you can replace the contents with something like this:

   ```
   {
     "DocumentName": "AWSManagedServices-StopDmsTask",
     "Region": "us-east-1",
     "Parameters": {
         "ReplicationTaskArn": [
           "TASK_ARN"
         ]
     }
   }
   ```

3. Output the JSON template to a file in your current folder; this example names it StopDmsRtRfc.json:

   ```
   aws amscm create-rfc --generate-cli-skeleton > StopDmsRtRfc.json
   ```

4. Modify and save the StopDmsRtRfc.json file. For example, you can replace the contents with something like this:

   ```
   {
     "ChangeTypeId": "ct-1vd3y4ygbqmfk",
     "ChangeTypeVersion": "1.0",
     "Title": "Stop DMS Replication Task"
   }
   ```

5. Create the RFC, specifying the execution parameters file and the StopDmsRtRfc file:

```
aws amscm create-rfc --cli-input-json file://StopDmsRtRfc.json --execution-
parameters file://StopDmsRtParams.json
```

You receive the ID of the new RFC in the response and can use it to submit and monitor the RFC. Until you submit it, the RFC remains in the editing state and does not start.

Tips

You can stop a DMS replication task, using the AMS console or the AMS API/CLI. For more information, see Working with AWS DMS Tasks.

Database (DB) import to AMS RDS for Microsoft SQL Server

> **Note**
>
> The AMS API/CLI (amscm and amsskms) endpoints are in the AWS N. Virginia Region, `us-east-1`. Depending on how your authentication is set, and what AWS Region your account and resources are in, you may need to add `--region us-east-1` when issuing commands. You may also need to add `--profile saml`, if that is your authentication method.

The DB import to AMS RDS for SQL Server, process relies on AMS change types (CTs) submitted as requests for change (RFCs), and uses the Amazon RDS API parameters as input. MicroSoft SQL Server is a relational database management system (RDBMS). To learn more, see also: Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS) and rds or Amazon RDS API reference.

> **Note**
>
> Make sure each RFC completes successfully before moving on to the next step.

High level import steps:

1. Back up your source on-premises MS SQL database into a .bak (backup) file
2. Copy the .bak file into the transit (encrypted) Amazon Simple Storage Service (S3) bucket

3. Import the .bak into a new DB on your target Amazon RDS MS SQL instance

Requirements:

- MS SQL RDS stack in AMS
- RDS stack with restore option (`SQLSERVER_BACKUP_RESTORE`)
- Transit S3 bucket
- IAM role with bucket access allowing Amazon RDS to assume the role
- An EC2 instance with MS SQL Management Studio installed to manage the RDS (can be a workstation on-premises)

Setting up

Complete these tasks to begin the import process.

1. Submit an RFC to create an RDS stack using Deployment | Advanced stack components | RDS database stack | Create (ct-2z60dyvto9g6c). *Do not use the target DB name* (`RDSDBName` parameter) in the creation request, the target DB will be created during the import. Make sure to allow enough space (`RDSAllocatedStorage` parameter). For details on doing this, see the AMS Change Management Guide RDS DB Stack | Create.
2. Submit an RFC to create the transit S3 bucket (if does not exist already) using Deployment | Advanced stack components | S3 storage | Create (ct-1a68ck03fn98r). For details on doing this, see the AMS Change Management Guide S3 Storage | Create.
3. Submit a Management | Other | Other | Update (ct-1e1xtak34nx76) RFC to implement the `customer_rds_s3_role` with these details:

   In the console:

   - Subject: "To support MS SQL Server Database Import, implement `customer_rds_s3_role` on this account.
   - Transit S3 bucket name: *`BUCKET_NAME`*.
   - Contact information: *`EMAIL`*.

   With an ImportDbParams.json file for the CLI:

```
{
       "Comment": "{"Transit S3 bucket name":"BUCKET_NAME"}",
```

```
        "Priority": "High"
      }
}
```

4. Submit a Management | Other | Other | Update RFC requesting AMS to set the SQLSERVER_BACKUP_RESTORE option to the RDS created in step 1 (use the stack ID from the step 1 output, and the `customer_rds_s3_role` IAM role in this request, in this request).
5. Submit an RFC to create an EC2 instance (you can use any existing EC2 or on-premise workstation/instances), and install Microsoft SQL Management Studio on the instance.

Importing the database

To import the database (DB), follow these steps.

1. Back up your source on-premises database using MS SQL Native backup and restore (see Support for native backup and restore in SQL Server). As the result of running that operation, you should have a .bak (backup) file.
2. Upload the .bak file to and existing transit S3 bucket using the AWS S3 CLI or AWS S3 console. For information on transit S3 buckets, see Protecting data using encryption.
3. Import the .bak file into a new DB on your target RDS for SQL Server MS SQL instance (for details on types, see Amazon RDS for MySQL instance types):

    a. Log into the EC2 instance (on-premises workstation) and open MS SQL Management Studio

    b. Connect to the target RDS instance created as prerequisite in step #1. Follow this procedure to connect: Connecting to a DB Instance Running the Microsoft SQL Server Database Engine

    c. Start the import (restore) job with a new Structured Query Language (SQL) query (for details on SQL queries, see Introduction to SQL). The target database name must be new (do not use the same name as the database that you previously created). Example without encryption:

    ```
    exec msdb.dbo.rds_restore_database
            @restore_db_name=TARGET_DB_NAME,

            @s3_arn_to_restore_from='arn:aws:s3:::BUCKET_NAME/FILENAME.bak';
    ```

    d. Periodically check the status of the import job by running this query in a separate window:

```
exec msdb.dbo.rds_task_status;
```

If the status changes to Failed, look for the failure details in the message.

Cleanup

Once you have imported the database, you might want to remove unnecessary resources, follow these steps.

1. Delete the backup file (.bak) from the S3 bucket. You can use the S3 console to do this. For the CLI command to delete an object from an S3 bucket, see rm in the AWS CLI Command Reference.
2. Delete the S3 bucket if you're not planning to use it. For steps on doing that, see Delete Stack.
3. If you're not planning to do MS SQL imports, submit a Management | Other | Other | Update (ct-0xdawir96cy7k) RFC and request that AMS delete the IAM role `customer_rds_s3_role`.

Tier and Tie App Deployments in AMS

A Tier and Tie deployment is where you create, configure, and deploy the resources of a stack independently using separate RFCs, and use the IDs of the stack components as you progress to associate them with each other.

For example, to deploy a *high availability* (redundant) website behind a load balancer, and a database, using a Tier and Tie approach, submit RFCs for a database, and a load balancer, and two EC2 instances or an Auto Scaling group, and configure the EC2 instances or Auto Scaling group with the ID of the ELB that you created.

After the resources deploy, you can submit a security group create change to allow the resources to talk to the database. For details about creating security groups, see Create Security Group.

Full stack app deployments in AMS

A Full Stack deployment is where you submit an RFC with a CT that creates and configures everything you need at once. For example, to deploy the high availability website just described (EC2 instances, load balancer, and database) you would use a CT that, all together, created and configured an Auto Scaling group, a load balancer, a database, and the security group settings

required for all instances to function as a stack. Examples of two AMS CTs that do this are described next.

- High Availability Two-Tier Stack (ct-06mjngx5flwto): This change type allows you to create a stack and configure an Auto Scaling Group, RDS-backed database, Load Balancer, and CodeDeploy application and configuration. Note that the load balancer isn't considered a tier as it is shared across multiple applications as a network appliance and the CodeDeploy functions are also considered an appliance. Additionally, it creates a CodeDeploy deployment group (with the name you give the CodeDeploy application) that can be used to deploy your applications. Security group settings to allow the resources to function together are automatically created.
- High Availability One-Tier Stack (ct-09t6q7j9v5hrn): This change type allows you to create a stack and configure an Auto Scaling Group, and an Application Load Balancer. Security group settings that allow the resources to function together are automatically created.

Working with provisioning change types (CTs)

AMS has responsibility for your managed infrastructure, to make changes you must submit an RFC with the correct CT classification (category, subcategory, item, and operation). This section describes how to find CTs, determine if any are right for your needs, and request a new CT if none are.

See if an existing CT meets your requirements

Once you've determined what you want to deploy with AMS, the next step is to study the existing CTs and CloudFormation templates to see if a solution already exists.

When creating an RFC, you must specify the CT. You can use the AWS Management Console or the AMS API/CLI. Examples of using both are described next.

You can use the console or the API/CLI to find a change type ID (CT) or version. There are two methods, either a search or choosing the classification. For both selection types, You can sort the search by choosing either **Most frequently used**, **Most recently used**, or **Alphabetical**.

YouTube Video: How do I create an RFC using the AWS Managed Services CLI and where can I find the CT Schema?

In the AMS console, on the **RFCs** -> **Create RFC** page:

- With **Browse by change type** selected (the default), either:

- Use the **Quick create** area to select from AMS's most popular CTs. Click on a label and the **Run RFC** page opens with the **Subject** option auto-filled for you. Complete the remaining options as needed and click **Run** to submit the RFC.
- Or, scroll down to the **All change types** area and start typing a CT name in the option box, you don't have to have the exact or full change type name. You can also search for a CT by change type ID, classification, or execution mode (automated or manual) by entering the relevant words.

  With the default **Cards** view selected, matching CT cards appear as you type, select a card and click **Create RFC**. With the **Table** view selected, choose the relevant CT and click **Create RFC**. Both methods open the **Run RFC** page.

- Alternatively, and to explore change type choices, click **Choose by category** at the top of the page to open a series of drop-down option boxes.
- Choose **Category**, a **Subcategory**, an **Item**, and an **Operation**. The information box for that change type appears a panel appears at the bottom of the page.
- When you're ready, press **Enter**, and a list of matching change types appears.
- Choose a change type from the list. The information box for that change type appears at the bottom of the page.
- After you have the correct change type, choose **Create RFC**.

> **Note**
>
> The AMS CLI must be installed for these commands to work. To install the AMS API or CLI, go to the AMS console **Developers Resources** page. For reference material on the AMS CM API or AMS SKMS API, see the AMS Information Resources section in the User Guide. You may need to add a `--profile` option for authentication; for example, `aws amsskms` *`ams-cli-command`* `--profile SAML`. You may also need to add the `--region` option as all AMS commands run out of us-east-1; for example `aws amscm` *`ams-cli-command`* `--region=us-east-1`.

> **Note**
>
> The AMS API/CLI (amscm and amsskms) endpoints are in the AWS N. Virginia Region, `us-east-1`. Depending on how your authentication is set, and what AWS Region your

account and resources are in, you may need to add `--region us-east-1` when issuing commands. You may also need to add `--profile saml`, if that is your authentication method.

To search for a change type using the AMS CM API (see ListChangeTypeClassificationSummaries) or CLI:

You can use a filter or query to search. The ListChangeTypeClassificationSummaries operation has Filters options for `Category`, `Subcategory`, `Item`, and `Operation`, but the values must match the existing values exactly. For more flexible results when using the CLI, you can use the `--query` option.

Change type filtering with the AMS CM API/CLI

Attribute	Valid values	Valid/Default condition	Notes
ChangeTypeId	Any string representing a ChangeTypeId (For ex: ct-abc123xyz7890)	Equals	For change type IDs, see the Change Type Reference. For change type IDs, see Finding a Change Type or CSIO.
Category	Any free-form text	Contains	Regular expressions in each individual field are not supported. Case insensitive search
Subcategory			
Item			
Operation			

1. Here are some examples of listing change type classifications:

   The following command lists all change type categories.

   ```
   aws amscm list-change-type-categories
   ```

The following command lists the subcategories belonging to a specified category.

```
aws amscm list-change-type-subcategories --category CATEGORY
```

The following command lists the items belonging to a specified category and subcategory.

```
aws amscm list-change-type-items --category CATEGORY --subcategory SUBCATEGORY
```

2. Here are some examples of searching for change types with CLI queries:

   The following command searches CT classification summaries for those that contain "S3" in the Item name and creates output of the category, subcategory, item, operation, and change type ID in table form.

```
aws amscm list-change-type-classification-summaries --query
 "ChangeTypeClassificationSummaries [?contains(Item, 'S3')].
[Category,Subcategory,Item,Operation,ChangeTypeId]" --output table
```

```
+-------------------------------------------------------------+
|               ListChangeTypeClassificationSummaries         |
+----------+-------------------------+--+------+--------------+
|Deployment|Advanced Stack Components|S3|Create|ct-1a68ck03fn98r|
+----------+-------------------------+--+------+--------------+
```

3. You can then use the change type ID to get the CT schema and examine the parameters. The following command outputs the schema to a JSON file named CreateS3Params.schema.json.

```
aws amscm get-change-type-version --change-type-id "ct-1a68ck03fn98r"
 --query "ChangeTypeVersion.ExecutionInputSchema" --output text >
 CreateS3Params.schema.json
```

   For information about using CLI queries, see How to Filter the Output with the --query Option and the query language reference, JMESPath Specification.

4. After you have the change type ID, we recommend verifying the version for the change type to make sure it's the latest version. Use this command to find the version for a specified change type:

```
aws amscm list-change-type-version-summaries --filter
 Attribute=ChangeTypeId,Value=CHANGE_TYPE_ID
```

To find the `AutomationStatus` for a specific change type, run this command:

```
aws amscm --profile saml get-change-type-version --change-type-id CHANGE_TYPE_ID --
query "ChangeTypeVersion.{AutomationStatus:AutomationStatus.Name}"
```

To find the `ExpectedExecutionDurationInMinutes` for a specific change type, run this command:

```
aws amscm --profile saml get-change-type-version --change-type-id ct-14027q0sjyt1h
 --query "ChangeTypeVersion.{ExpectedDuration:ExpectedExecutionDurationInMinutes}"
```

Once you have found a CT that you think is appropriate, look at the execution parameters JSON schema associated with it to learn if it addresses your use case.

Use this command to output a CT schema to a JSON file named after the CT; this example outputs the Create S3 storage schema:

```
aws amscm get-change-type-version --change-type-id "ct-1a68ck03fn98r"
--query "ChangeTypeVersion.ExecutionInputSchema" --output text >
CreateBucketParams.json
```

Let's take a close look at what this schema offers.

S3 Bucket Create Schema

```
{
  "$schema": "http://json-schema.org/draft-04/sch
ema#",
"name": "Create S3 Storage
"description": "Use to create an Amazon Simple
 Storage Service stack.",
  "type": "object",
  "properties": {
    "Description": {
      "description": "The description of the
 stack.",
```

The schema begins with the CT ("description"), which tells you what the schema is for. In this case, to create an S3 storage stack.

Next, you have required and optional properties that you can specify. Default property values are given. The

```
      "type": "string",
      "minLength": 1,
      "maxLength": 500
    },
    "VpcId": {
      "description": "ID of the VPC to create the S3
 Bucket in, in the form vpc-a1b2c3d4e5f67890e.",
      "type": "string",
      "pattern": "^vpc-[a-z0-9]{17}$"
    },
    "StackTemplateId": {
      "description": "Required value: stm-s2b72
beb000000000.",
      "type": "string",
      "enum": ["stm-s2b72beb000000000"]
    },
    "Name":{
      "description": "The name of the stack to
 create.",
      "type": "string",
      "minLength": 1,
      "maxLength": 255
    },
    "Tags": {
      "description": "Up to seven tags (key/value
 pairs) for the stack.",
      "type": "array",
      "items": {
        "type": "object",
        "properties": {
          "Key": {
            "type": "string",
            "minLength": 1,
            "maxLength": 127
          },
          "Value": {
            "type": "string",
            "minLength": 1,
            "maxLength": 255
          }
        },
        "additionalProperties": false,
        "required": [
          "Key",
```

properties that are required are listed at the end of the schema.

In the StackTemplateId area, you see that there is one specific stack template for this CT and schema, and its ID is a required property value.

The schema allows you to tag the stack you are creating, for internal bookkeeping purposes. Additionally, some options, like backup, require a tag of Key:backup and Value:true. For in-depth information, read Tagging Your Amazon EC2 Resources.

```
          "Value"
        ]
      },
      "minItems": 1,
      "maxItems": 7
    },
    "TimeoutInMinutes": {
      "description": "The amount of time, in minutes,
 to allow for creation of the stack.",
      "type": "number",
      "minimum": 0,
      "maximum": 60
    },
    "Parameters": {
      "description": "Specifications for the
 stack.",
      "type": "object",
      "properties": {
        "AccessControl": {
          "description": "The canned (predefined)
 access control list (ACL) to assign to the bucket.",
          "type": "string",
          "enum": [
            "Private",
            "PublicRead",
            "AuthenticatedRead",
            "BucketOwnerRead"
          ]
        },
        "BucketName": {
          "description": "A name for the bucket.
 The bucket name must contain only lowercase letters,
 numbers, periods (.), and hyphens (-).",
          "type": "string",
          "pattern": "^[a-z0-9]([-.a-z0-9]+)[a-z
0-9]$",
          "minLength": 3,
          "maxLength": 63
        }
      },
      "additionalProperties": false,
      "required": [
        "AccessControl",
        "BucketName"
```

The Parameters section of the CT JSON schema is where you provide the execution parameters.

For this schema, only the ACL and BucketName are required execution parameters.

```
      ]
    }
  },
  "additionalProperties": false,
  "required": [
    "Description",
    "VpcId",
    "StackTemplateId",
    "Name",
    "TimeoutInMinutes",
    "Parameters"
  ]
}
```

Request a new CT

After examining the schema, you may decide that it does not provide enough parameters to create the deployment that you want. If that is the case, examine existing CloudFormation templates to find one that is closer to what you want. Once you know what additional parameters you need, submit a Management | Other | Other | Create CT.

> **Note**
>
> All Other | Other Create and Update CTs receive the attention of an AMS operator, who will contact you to discuss the new CT.

To submit a request for a new CT, access the AMS console through the regular AWS Management Console and then follow these steps.

1. From the left navigation, click **RFCs**.

   The RFCs dashboard page opens.

2. Click **Create**.

   The Create a request for change page opens.

3. Select Management in the **Category** drop-down list, and Other for the **Subcategory** and **Item**. For the **Operation**, choose Create. The RFC will need approval before it can be implemented.

4. Enter information for why you want the CT, for example: Requesting a modified Create S3 storage CT that allows custom ACLs, based on the existing Create S3 storage CT. This should result in a new CT: Deployment | Advanced Stack Components | S3 storage | Create S3 custom ACL. This new CT could be public.
5. Click **Submit**.

   Your RFC displays on the RFC dashboard.

Test the new CT

Once AWS Managed Services has created that new CT, you test it by submitting an RFC with it. If you worked with AMS to make the new CT pre-approved, then you can simply follow a standard RFC submission, and watch for the result (for details on submitting RFCs, see Creating and Submitting an RFC). If the new CT is not pre-approved (you want to be sure that it is never run without explicit approval), then you will need to discuss its implementation with AMS each time you want to run it.

Quick starts

Topics

- AMS Resource Scheduler quick start
- Setting up cross account backups (intra-Region)

Using a combination of AMS change types, you can accomplish complex tasks.

You can use the AMS change management system to set up AMS Resource Scheduler, for a multi-account landing zone (MALZ) or for a single-account landing zone (SALZ) account. The process varies. Also, to do file transfers and cross-account snapshots.

AMS Resource Scheduler quick start

Use this quick start guide to implement AMS Resource Scheduler, a tag-based instance scheduler to save cost in AMS Advanced.

The AMS Resource Scheduler is based on the AWS Instance Scheduler.

AMS Resource Scheduler terminology

Before you begin, it's good to be familiar with the AMS Resource Scheduler terminology:

- **period**: Each schedule must contain at least one period that defines the time(s) the instance should run. A schedule can contain more than one period. When more than one period is used in a schedule, the Resource Scheduler applies the appropriate start action when at least one of the period rules is true.
- **timezone**: For a list of acceptable time zone values to be used in the **DefaultTimezone** parameter referenced later, see the **TZ** column of the List of TZ Database Time Zones.
- **hibernate**: When set to **true** EC2 instances that are enabled for hibernation and meet hibernation requirements are hibernated (suspend-to-disk). Check the EC2 console to find out if your instances are enabled for hibernation. Use hibernation for stopped Amazon EC2 instances running Amazon Linux.
- **enforced**: When set to **true**, based on the schedule defined, the Resource Scheduler stops a running resource if it's manually started outside of the running period, and it starts a resource if it's stopped manually during the running period.

- **retain_running**: When set to **true**, prevents the Resource Scheduler from stopping an instance at the end of a running period if the instance was manually started before the beginning of the period. For example, if an instance with a configured **period** that runs from 9 am to 5 pm is manually started before 9 am, the Resource Scheduler does not stop the instance at 5 pm.
- **ssm-maintenance-window**: Add an AWS Systems Manager maintenance window as a running period to a schedule. When you specify the name of a maintenance window that exists in the same account and AWS Region as your deployed stack to schedule your Amazon EC2 instances, the Resource Scheduler will start the instance before the start of the maintenance window and stop the instance at the end of the maintenance window, if no other running period specifies that the instance should run, and if the maintenance event is completed.

  The Resource Scheduler uses the AWS Lambda frequency you specified during initial configuration to determine how long before the maintenance window to start your instance. If you set the **Frequency** AWS CloudFormation parameter to 10 minutes or less, the Resource Scheduler starts the instance 10 minutes before the maintenance window. If you set the frequency to greater than 10 minutes, the Resource Scheduler starts the instance the same number of minutes as the frequency you specified. For example, if you set the Systems Manager maintenance window frequency to 30 minutes, the Resource Schedulers starts the instance 30 minutes before the maintenance window.

  For more information, see AWS Systems Manager Maintenance Windows.
- **override-status**: Temporarily override the Resource Scheduler's configured **Schedule** start and stop actions. If you set the field to **running**, the Resource Scheduler starts, but not stops, the applicable instance. The instance runs until you stop it manually. If you set the **override-status** to **stopped**, the Resource Scheduler stops but not starts the applicable instance. The instance does not run until you manually start it.

AMS Resource Scheduler implementation

To deploy an AMS Resource scheduler solution, follow these steps.

1. Submit a Deployment | AMS Resource Scheduler | Solution | Deploy (ct-0ywnhc8e5k9z5) RFC and provide the following parameters:

   - **SchedulingActive**: **Yes** to enable resource scheduling, **No** to disable. Default is **Yes**.
   - **ScheduledServices**: Enter a comma-separated list of services to schedule resources for. Valid values include a combination of **autoscaling**, **ec2**, and **rds**. Default is **autoscaling,ec2,rds**.

- **TagName**: The name of the Tag Key that associates resource schedule schemas with service resources. Default is **Schedule**.

  > **Note**
  >
  > Your Resource Scheduler deployment will only operate on resources that have this tag.

- **DefaultTimezone**: The name of the time zone, in the form US/Pacific, to be used as the default time zone. Default is **UTC**.

2. After you receive a confirmation that the RFC in step one executed successfully, you can submit the Period | Add change type.
3. Finally, submit an RFC to add a schedule to the period that was created in step two. Use the Schedule | Add change type.

AMS Resource Scheduler implementation and usage FAQs

Frequently asked questions about AMS Resource Scheduler.

Q: What happens if I enable hibernation but the EC2 instance does not support it?

A: Hibernation saves the contents from the instance memory (RAM) to your Amazon Elastic Block Store (Amazon EBS) root volume. If this field is set to **true**, instances are hibernated when Resource Scheduler stops them.

If you set Resource Scheduler to use hibernation but your instances are not enabled for hibernation or they do not meet the hibernation prerequisites, Resource Scheduler logs a warning and the instances are stopped without hibernation. For more information, see Hibernate Your Instance.

Q: What happens if I set both **override_status** and **enforced**?

A: If you set **override_status** to **running** and set **enforced** to **true** (prevents an instance from being manually started outside of a running period), Resource Scheduler stops the instance.

If you set **override_status** to **stopped**, and set **enforced** to **true** (prevents an instance from being manually stopped during a running period), the Resource Scheduler restarts the instance.

> **Note**
>
> If **enforced** is **false**, the configured **override** behavior is applied.

Q: After the AMS Resource Scheduler is deployed, how do I disable or enable the resource scheduler in my account?

A: To disable or enable AMS Resource Scheduler:

- To **disable**: Create an RFC using State | Disable. Be sure to set the **SchedulerState** to **DISABLE**
- To **enable**: Create an RFC using State | Enable. Be sure to set the **SchedulerState** to **ENABLE**

QWhat happens if the AMS Resource Scheduler period falls within my patching maintenance window?

A: Resource Scheduler works based on its configured schedules. If it is configured to stop an instance while patching is in flight, then it stops the instance unless the patching window is added as a period to the schedule before patching begins. In other words, Resource Scheduler does not auto-start any stopped instances for patching unless a designated period is configured. To avoid conflicts with your patching maintenance window, add the time window allocated for patching to the Resource Scheduler schedule as a period. To add a period to existing schedule, create an RFC using Period | Add.

Q If I need to have a different schedule for different EC2 instances, can I have more than one schedule setup inside of my account?

A: Yes, you can create multiple schedules. Each schedule can have multiple periods based on the requirement. When AMS Resource Scheduler is enabled in the account, a **Tag Key** is configured. As an example, if the Tag Key is "Schedule", the Tag Value can differ based on different schedules which corresponds to AMS Resource Scheduler's schedule name. To add a new schedule, you can create an RFC using the Management | AMS Resource Scheduler | Schedule | Add (ct-2bxelbn765ive) change type, see Schedule | Add.

Q: Where can I find all the different change types that are supported for AMS Resource Scheduler?

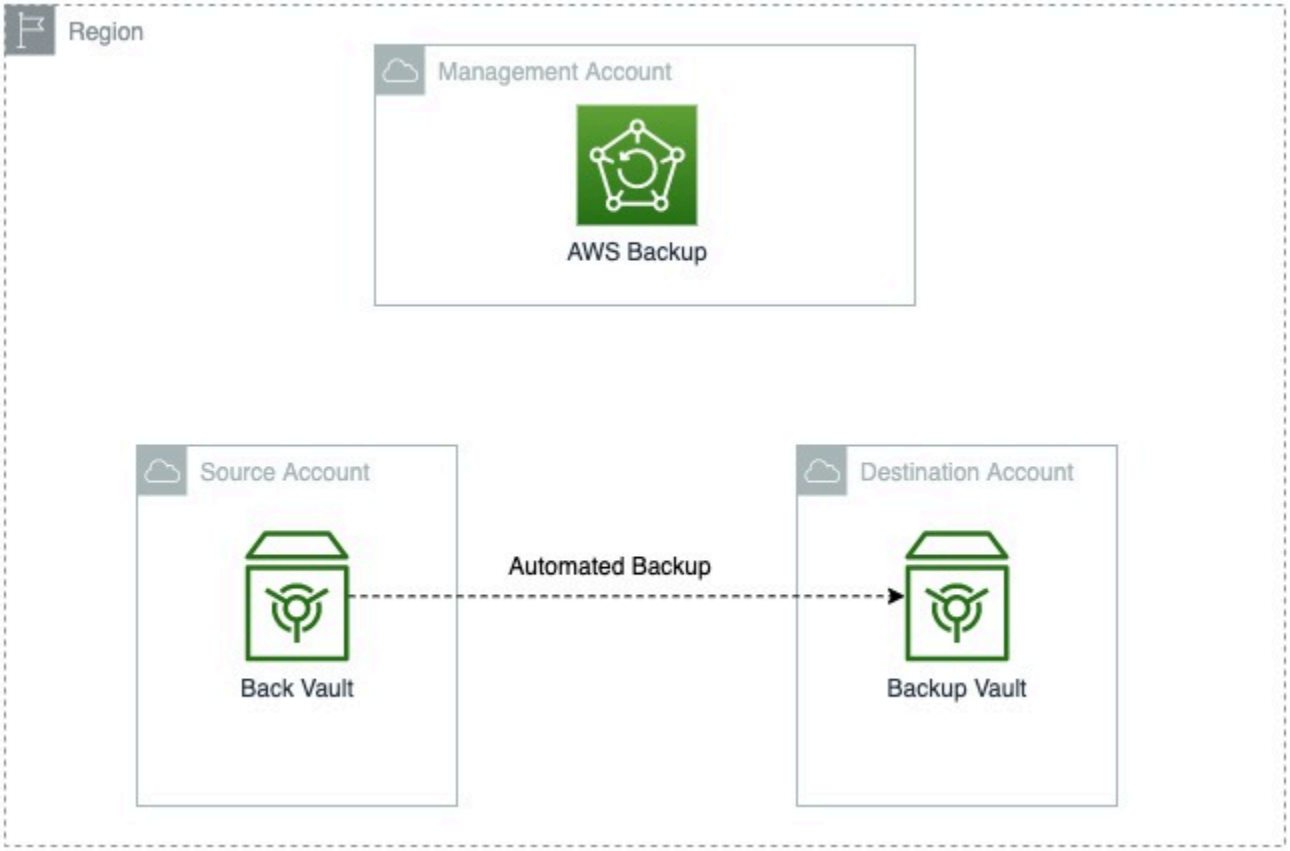
A: AMS has Resource Scheduler change types to deploy the AMS Resource Scheduler to your account; enable or disable it; define, add, update, and delete schedules and periods to use with it; and describe (get a detailed description of) the schedules and periods.

Setting up cross account backups (intra-Region)

AWS Backup supports the ability to copy snapshots from one account to another within the same AWS Region as long as the two accounts are within the same AWS Organization. As an example, in AMS Advanced multi-account landing zone (MALZ), you can set up cross account snapshot copy within the same AWS Region using this quick-start.

For more information, see AWS Backup and AWS Organizations bring cross-account backup feature

You copy snapshots cross account for disaster recovery (DR). You might have requirements to keep snapshots within the same AWS Region, but across from the account boundaries, for data protection.



Overview:

At a high level, these are the steps for cross-account backups within AMS:

- Create destination account to host backups in the AWS Region where your AMS landing zone is hosted (step 1)

- Create a KMS key for encrypting backups in the destination account (step 3)
- Create a backup vault in the destination account of the same region as your AMS Advanced landing zone (step 4)
- Enable the cross account setting in your Management account (step 5)
- Create or modify the source account backup plan and rule(s) (step 6)

> **Note**
>
> Ensure that both the source and destination accounts are in the same Region. If you want to copy your backups cross region, contact your CA or CSDM.

To enable and set up cross-account backups:

1. Create a destination account to host backups; if you already have such an account, you can skip this step. To create the account, submit an RFC from your Management Payer account using the *Deployment | Managed landing zone | Management account | Create application account (with VPC)* change type (ct-1zdasmc2ewzrs).
2. [Optional] If resources or snapshots are encrypted in the source account (for example, Prod), share the KMS key used for encryption with the destination account. To do this, submit an RFC using the *Management | Advanced stack components | KMS key | Update* change type (ct-3ovo7px2vsa6n).
3. In the destination account, create a KMS Key to be used for Backup Vault encryption. To do this, submit an RFC using the *Deployment | Advanced stack components | KMS key | Create (auto)* change type (ct-1d84keiri1jhg).
4. In the destination account, create a Backup Vault using the key created earlier. AWS Backup Vaults can be created by using the CFN ingest automated change type, *Deployment | Ingestion | Stack from CloudFormation Template | Create* (ct-36cn2avfrrj9v). In the same request, the vault access policy needs to be modified to allow the source account(s) access to the vault. Here is an example policy:

   Example CloudFormation template for a Backup Vault:

```
{
  "Description": "Test infrastructure",
  "Resources": {
```

```
  "BackupVaultForTesting": {
    "Type": "AWS::Backup::BackupVault",
    "Properties": {
      "BackupVaultName": "backup-vault-for-test",
      "EncryptionKeyArn" : "arn:aws:kms:us-east-2:123456789012:key/227d8xxx-
aefx-44ex-a09x-b90c487b4xxx",
        "AccessPolicy" : {
          "Version": "2012-10-17",
          "Statement": [
            {
              "Sid": "AllowSrcAccountPermissionsToCopy",
              "Effect": "Allow",
              "Action": "backup:CopyIntoBackupVault",
              "Resource": "*",
              "Principal": {
                "AWS": ["arn:aws:iam::987654321098:root"]
              }
            }
          ]
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
```

5. From your Management Payer account, enable **Cross-Account backup**. To do this, submit an RFC using the *Management | AWS Backup | Backup plan | Enable cross account copy (Management account)* change type (ct-2yja7ihh30ply).
6. Lastly, from the source account where backups are sourced, create the rule or rules of the backup plan that govern the backups to copy snapshots cross account. To do this, submit an RFC using the *Deployment | AWS Backup | Backup plan | Create* change type(ct-2hyozbpa0sx0m). If you need to update an existing backup plan, submit an RFC using the *Management | Other | Other | Update* change type (ct-0xdawir96cy7k) with this information:

   1. The backup plan name as well as the rule name to be updated.
   2. The destination/ICE account backup vault ARN.
   3. The retention days/months you would like to keep the snapshots in the target ICE vault for.

Tutorials

Topics

- Console Tutorial: High Availability Two Tier Stack (Linux/RHEL)
- Console Tutorial: Deploying a Tier and Tie WordPress Website
- CLI Tutorial: High Availability Two-Tier Stack (Linux/RHEL)
- CLI Tutorial: Deploying a Tier and Tie WordPress Website

The following tutorials detail the steps to creating a two-tier stack with the High Availability (ct-06mjngx5flwto), using the CLI and using the Console and deploying a Linux or RHEL Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling group (ASG). A similar, tier-and-tie tutorial follows each (one for the Console and one for the CLI), that uses separate CTs, created in such an order that they allow you to tie together resources as they are created.

Descriptions for all CT options, including ChangeTypeId can be found in the managedservices/latest/ctref/ Change Type Reference.

Console Tutorial: High Availability Two Tier Stack (Linux/RHEL)

This section describes how to deploy a high availability (HA) WordPress site into an AMS environment using the AMS console.

> **Note**
>
> This deployment walkthrough has been tested in AMZN Linux and RHEL environments.

Summary of tasks and required RFCs:

1. Create infrastructure (HA two-tier stack)
2. Create an S3 bucket for CodeDeploy applications
3. Create the WordPress application bundle and upload it to the S3 bucket
4. Deploy the application with CodeDeploy
5. Access the WordPress site and log in to validate the deployment
6. Tear down the deployment

Descriptions for all CT options, including ChangeTypeId, can be found in AMS Change Type Reference.

Before You Begin

The Deployment | Advanced Stack Components | High Availability Two Tier Stack | Create CT creates an Auto Scaling group, a load balancer, a database, and a CodeDeploy application name and deployment group (with the same name that you give the application). For information on CodeDeploy see What is CodeDeploy?

This walkthrough uses a High Availability Two-Tier Stack RFC that includes `UserData` and also describes how to create a WordPress bundle that CodeDeploy can deploy.

The `UserData` shown in the example gets instance metadata such as instance ID, region, etc, from within a running instance by querying the EC2 instance metadata service available at http://169.254.169.254/latest/meta-data/. This line in the user data script: `REGION=$(curl 169.254.169.254/latest/meta-data/placement/availability-zone/ | sed 's/[a-z]$//')`, retrieves the availability zone name from the meta-data service into the $REGION variable for our supported regions, and uses it to complete the URL for the S3 bucket where the CodeDeploy agent is downloaded. The 169.254.169.254 IP is routable only within the VPC (all VPCs can query the service). For information about the service, see Instance Metadata and User Data. Note also that scripts entered as UserData are executed as the "root" user and do not need to use the "sudo" command.

This walkthrough leaves the following parameters at the default value (shown):

- Auto Scaling group: `Cooldown=300, DesiredCapacity=2, EBSOptimized=false, HealthCheckGracePeriod=600, IAMInstanceProfile=customer-mc-ec2-instance-profile, InstanceDetailedMonitoring=true, InstanceRootVolumeIops=0, InstanceRootVolumeType=standard, InstanceType=m3.medium, MaxInstances=2, MinInstances=2, ScaleDownPolicyCooldown=300, ScaleDownPolicyEvaluationPeriods=4, ScaleDownPolicyPeriod=60, ScaleDownPolicyScalingAdjustment=-1, ScaleDownPolicyStatistic=Average, ScaleDownPolicyThreshold=35, ScaleMetricName=CPUUtilization, ScaleUpPolicyCooldown=60, ScaleUpPolicyEvaluationPeriods=2, ScaleUpPolicyPeriod=60, ScaleUpPolicyScalingAdjustment=2, ScaleUpPolicyStatistic=Average, ScaleUpPolicyThreshold=75`.
- Load Balancer: `HealthCheckInterval=30, HealthCheckTimeout=5`.

- Database: `BackupRetentionPeriod=7, Backups=true, InstanceType=db.m3.medium, IOPS=0, MultiAZ=true, PreferredBackupWindow=22:00-23:00, PreferredMaintenanceWindow=wed:03:32-wed:04:02, StorageEncrypted=false, StorageEncryptionKey="", StorageType=gp2`.
- Application: `DeploymentConfigName=CodeDeployDefault.OneAtATime`.

Variable Parameters:

The Console provides an **ASAP** option for the start time and this walkthrough recommends using it. **ASAP** causes the RFC to be executed as soon as approvals are passed.

> **Note**
>
> There are many parameters that you might choose to set differently than as shown. The values for those parameters shown in the example have been tested but may not be right for you. Only required values are shown in the examples. Values in *`replaceable`* font should be changed as they are particular to your account.

Create the Infrastructure

This procedure utilizes the High availability two-tier stack CT followed by the Create S3 storage CT.

Gathering the following data before you begin will make the deployment go more quickly.

REQUIRED DATA HA STACK:

- **AutoScalingGroup**:
  - **UserData**: This value is provided in this tutorial. It includes commands to set up the resource for CodeDeploy and start the CodeDeploy agent.
  - **AMI-ID**: This value determines the operating system of EC2 instances your Auto Scaling group (ASG) will spin up. Select an AMI in your account that starts with "customer-" and is of the operating system that you want. Find AMI IDs in the AMS Console VPCs -> VPCs details page. This walkthrough is for ASGs configured to use an Amazon Linux or RHEL AMI.
- **Database**:
  - These parameters, **DBEngine**, **EngineVersion**, and **LicenseModel** should be set according to your situation though the values shown in the example have been tested. The tutorial uses these values, respectively: *`MySQL`*, *`8.0.16`*, *`general-public-license`*.

  - These parameters, **DBName**, **MasterUserPassword**, and **MasterUsername** are required when deploying the application bundle. The tutorial uses these values, respectively: *wordpressDB*, *p4ssw0rd*, *admin*. Note that DBName can only contain alphanumeric characters.
  - When you enter the **MasterUsername** for the RDS DB, it will appear in cleartext, so log in to the database as soon as possible and change the password to ensure your security.
  - For **RDSSubnetIds**, use two Private subnets. Enter them one at a time pressing "Enter" after each. Find Subnet IDs with the For the AMS SKMS API reference, see the **Reports** tab in the AWS Artifact Console. operation (CLI: list-subnet-summaries) or in the AMS Console VPCs -> VPC details page.
- **LoadBalancer**:
  - Set this parameter, **Public** to **true** because the tutorial uses Public ELB subnets.
  - **ELBSubnetIds**: Use two Public subnets. Enter them one at a time pressing "Enter" after each. Find Subnet IDs with the For the AMS SKMS API reference, see the **Reports** tab in the AWS Artifact Console. operation (CLI: list-subnet-summaries) or in the AMS Console VPCs -> VPC details page.
- **Application**: The **ApplicationName** value sets the CodeDeploy application name and CodeDeploy deployment group name. You use it to deploy your application. It must be unique in the account. To check your account for CodeDeploy names, see the CodeDeploy Console. The example uses *WordPress* but, if you will use that value, make sure that it is not already in use.

1. Launch the high availability stack.

   a. On the **Create RFC** page, select the category **Deployment**, subcategory **Standard Stacks**, item **High availability two-tier stack** and operation **Create**, from the list.

   b. IMPORTANT: Choose **Advanced** and set the values as shown.

      You only need to enter values for starred (*) options, tested values are shown in the example; you can leave not-required empty options blank.

   c. For the **RFC Description** section:

      ```
      Subject: WP-HA-2-Tier-RFC
      ```

   d. For the **Resource information** section, set parameters for **AutoScalingGroup**, **Database**, **LoadBalancer**, **Application**, and **Tags**.

Also, the purpose of the "AppName" tag key is so you can easily search for the ASG instances in the EC2 console; you can call this tag key "Name" or any other key name that you want. Note that you can add up to 50 tags.

```
UserData:
    #!/bin/bash
    REGION=$(curl 169.254.169.254/latest/meta-data/placement/availability-zone/
 | sed 's/[a-z]$//')
    yum -y install ruby httpd
    chkconfig httpd on
    service httpd start
    touch /var/www/html/status
    cd /tmp
    curl -O https://aws-codedeploy-$REGION.s3.amazonaws.com/latest/install
    chmod +x ./install
    ./install auto
    chkconfig codedeploy-agent on
    service codedeploy-agent start
AmiId:               AMI-ID
Description:         WP-HA-2-Tier-Stack

Database:
    LicenseModel:    general-public-license (USE RADIO BUTTON)
    EngineVersion:   8.0.16
    DBEngine:        MySQL
    RDSSubnetIds:    PRIVATE_AZ1 PRIVATE_AZ2 (ENTER ONE AT A TIME PRESSING
 "ENTER" AFTER EACH)
    MasterUserPassword:  p4ssw0rd
    MasterUsername:      admin
    DBName:              wordpressDB

LoadBalancer:
    Public:              true (USE RADIO BUTTON)
    ELBSubnetIds:        PUBLIC_AZ1 PUBLIC_AZ2

Application:
    ApplicationName:     WordPress

Tags:
    Name:                WP-Rhel-Stack
```

e. Click **Submit** when finished.

2. Log in to the database that you created and change the password.
3. Launch an S3 bucket Stack.

   Gathering the following data before you begin will make the deployment go more quickly.

   REQUIRED DATA S3 BUCKET:

   - **VPC-ID**: This value determines where your S3 Bucket will be. Find VPC IDs with the For the AMS SKMS API reference, see the **Reports** tab in the AWS Artifact Console. operation (CLI: list-vpc-summaries) or in the AMS Console VPCs page.
   - **BucketName**: This value sets the S3 Bucket name, you use it to upload your application bundle. It must be unique across the region of the account and cannot include upper-case letters. Including your account ID as part of the BucketName is not a requirement but makes it easier to identify the bucket later. To see what S3 bucket names exist in the account, go to the Amazon S3 Console for your account.

   a. On the **Create RFC** page, select the category **Deployment**, subcategory **Advanced Stack Components**, item **S3 storage**, and operation **Create** from the RFC CT pick list.

   b. Keep the default **Basic** option and set the values as shown.

```
Subject:              S3-Bucket-WP-HA-RFC
Description:          S3BucketForWordPressBundles
BucketName:           ACCOUNT_ID-BUCKET_NAME
AccessControl:        Private
VpcId:                VPC_ID
Name:                 S3-Bucket-WP-HA-Stack
TimeoutInMinutes:     60
```

   c. Click **Submit** when finished. The bucket deployed with this change type allows full read/write access to the whole account.

Create, Upload, and Deploy the Application

First, create a WordPress application bundle, and then use the CodeDeploy CTs to create and deploy the application.

1. Download WordPress, extract the files and create a ./scripts directory.

Linux command:

```
wget https://github.com/WordPress/WordPress/archive/master.zip
```

Windows: Paste `https://github.com/WordPress/WordPress/archive/master.zip` into a browser window and download the zip file.

Create a temporary directory in which to assemble the package.

Linux:

```
mkdir /tmp/WordPress
```

Windows: Create a "WordPress" directory, you will use the directory path later.

2. Extract the WordPress source to the "WordPress" directory and create a ./scripts directory.

   Linux:

   ```
   unzip master.zip -d /tmp/WordPress_Temp
   cp -paf /tmp/WordPress_Temp/WordPress-master/* /tmp/WordPress
   rm -rf /tmp/WordPress_Temp
   rm -f master
   cd /tmp/WordPress
   mkdir scripts
   ```

   Windows: Go to the "WordPress" directory that you created and create a "scripts" directory there.

   If you are in a Windows environment, be sure to set the break type for the script files to Unix (LF). In Notepad ++, this is an option at the bottom right of the window.

3. Create the CodeDeploy **appspec.yml** file, in the WordPress directory (if copying the example, check the indentation, each space counts). IMPORTANT: Ensure that the "source" path is correct for copying the WordPress files (in this case, in your WordPress directory) to the expected destination (/var/www/html/WordPress). In the example, the appspec.yml file is in the directory with the WordPress files, so only "/" is needed. Also, even if you used a RHEL AMI for your Auto Scaling group, leave the "os: linux" line as-is. Example appspec.yml file:

   ```
   version: 0.0
   ```

```
os: linux
files:
  - source: /
    destination: /var/www/html/WordPress
hooks:
  BeforeInstall:
    - location: scripts/install_dependencies.sh
      timeout: 300
      runas: root
  AfterInstall:
    - location: scripts/config_wordpress.sh
      timeout: 300
      runas: root
  ApplicationStart:
    - location: scripts/start_server.sh
      timeout: 300
      runas: root
  ApplicationStop:
    - location: scripts/stop_server.sh
      timeout: 300
      runas: root
```

4. Create bash file scripts in the WordPress ./scripts directory.

   First, create `config_wordpress.sh` with the following content (if you prefer, you can edit the wp-config.php file directly).

   Note

   Replace *DBName* with the value given in the HA Stack RFC (for example, `wordpress`).
   Replace *DB_MasterUsername* with the `MasterUsername` value given in the HA Stack RFC (for example, `admin`).
   Replace *DB_MasterUserPassword* with the `MasterUserPassword` value given in the HA Stack RFC (for example, `p4ssw0rd`).
   Replace *DB_ENDPOINT* with the endpoint DNS name in the execution outputs of the HA Stack RFC (for example, `srt1cz23n45sfg.clgvd67uvydk.us-east-1.rds.amazonaws.com`). You can find this with the GetRfc operation (CLI: get-rfc --rfc-id RFC_ID) or in the AMS Console RFC details page for the HA Stack RFC that you previously submitted.

```
#!/bin/bash
chmod -R 755 /var/www/html/WordPress
cp /var/www/html/WordPress/wp-config-sample.php /var/www/html/WordPress/wp-
config.php
cd /var/www/html/WordPress
sed -i "s/database_name_here/DBName/g" wp-config.php
sed -i "s/username_here/DB_MasterUsername/g" wp-config.php
sed -i "s/password_here/DB_MasterUserPassword/g" wp-config.php
sed -i "s/localhost/DB_ENDPOINT/g" wp-config.php
```

5. In the same directory create `install_dependencies.sh` with the following content:

```
#!/bin/bash
yum install -y php
yum install -y php-mysql
yum install -y mysql
service httpd restart
```

> **Note**
>
> HTTPS is installed as part of the user data at launch in order to allow health checks to work from the start.

6. In the same directory create `start_server.sh` with the following content:

   - For Amazon Linux instances, use this:

     ```
     #!/bin/bash
     service httpd start
     ```

   - For RHEL instances, use this (the extra commands are policies that allow SELINUX to accept WordPress):

     ```
     #!/bin/bash
     setsebool -P  httpd_can_network_connect_db 1
     setsebool -P  httpd_can_network_connect 1
     chcon -t httpd_sys_rw_content_t /var/www/html/WordPress/wp-content -R
     restorecon -Rv /var/www/html
     service httpd start
     ```

7. In the same directory create `stop_server.sh` with the following content:

```
#!/bin/bash
service httpd stop
```

8. Create the zip bundle.

   Linux:

```
$ cd /tmp/WordPress
$ zip -r wordpress.zip .
```

   Windows: Go to your "WordPress" directory and select all of the files and create a zip file, be sure to name it wordpress.zip.

1. Upload the application bundle to the S3 bucket

   The package needs to be in place in order to continue deploying the stack.

   You automatically have access to any S3 bucket instance that you create. You can access it through your Bastions (see Accessing Instances), or through the S3 console, and upload the CodeDeploy package with drag-and-drop, or by browsing to and selecting the file.

   You can also use the following command in a shell window; be sure that you have the correct path to the zip file:

```
aws s3 cp wordpress/wordpress.zip s3://BUCKET_NAME/
```

2. Deploy the WordPress CodeDeploy Application Bundle

   REQUIRED DATA CODEDEPLOY APPLICATION DEPLOYMENT:

   - **CodeDeployApplicationName**: The name you gave the CodeDeploy application.
   - **CodeDeployGroupName**: Since the CodeDeploy application and group were both created from the name you gave the CodeDeploy application in the HA stack RFC, this is the same name as the **CodeDeployApplicationName**.
   - **S3Bucket**: The name you gave the S3 bucket.
   - **S3BundleType** and **S3Key**: These are part of the WordPress application bundle you deployed.

- **VpcId**: The relevant VPC.

a. On the **Create RFC** page, select the category **Deployment**, subcategory **Applications**, item **CodeDeploy application**, and operation **Deploy** from the RFC CT pick list.

b. Keep the default **Basic** option, and set the values as shown.

> **Note**
>
> Reference the CodeDeploy application, CodeDeploy deployment group, S3 bucket and bundle previously created.

```
Subject:                                    WP-CD-Deploy-RFC
Description:                                DeployWordPress
S3Bucket:                                   BUCKET_NAME
S3Key:                                      wordpress.zip
S3BundleType:                               zip
CodeDeployApplicationName:                  WordPress
CodeDeployDeploymentGroupName:              WordPress
CodeDeployIgnoreApplicationStopFailures:    false
RevisionType:                               S3



VpcId:                                      VPC_ID
Name:                                       WP-CD-Deploy-Op
TimeoutInMinutes:                           60
```

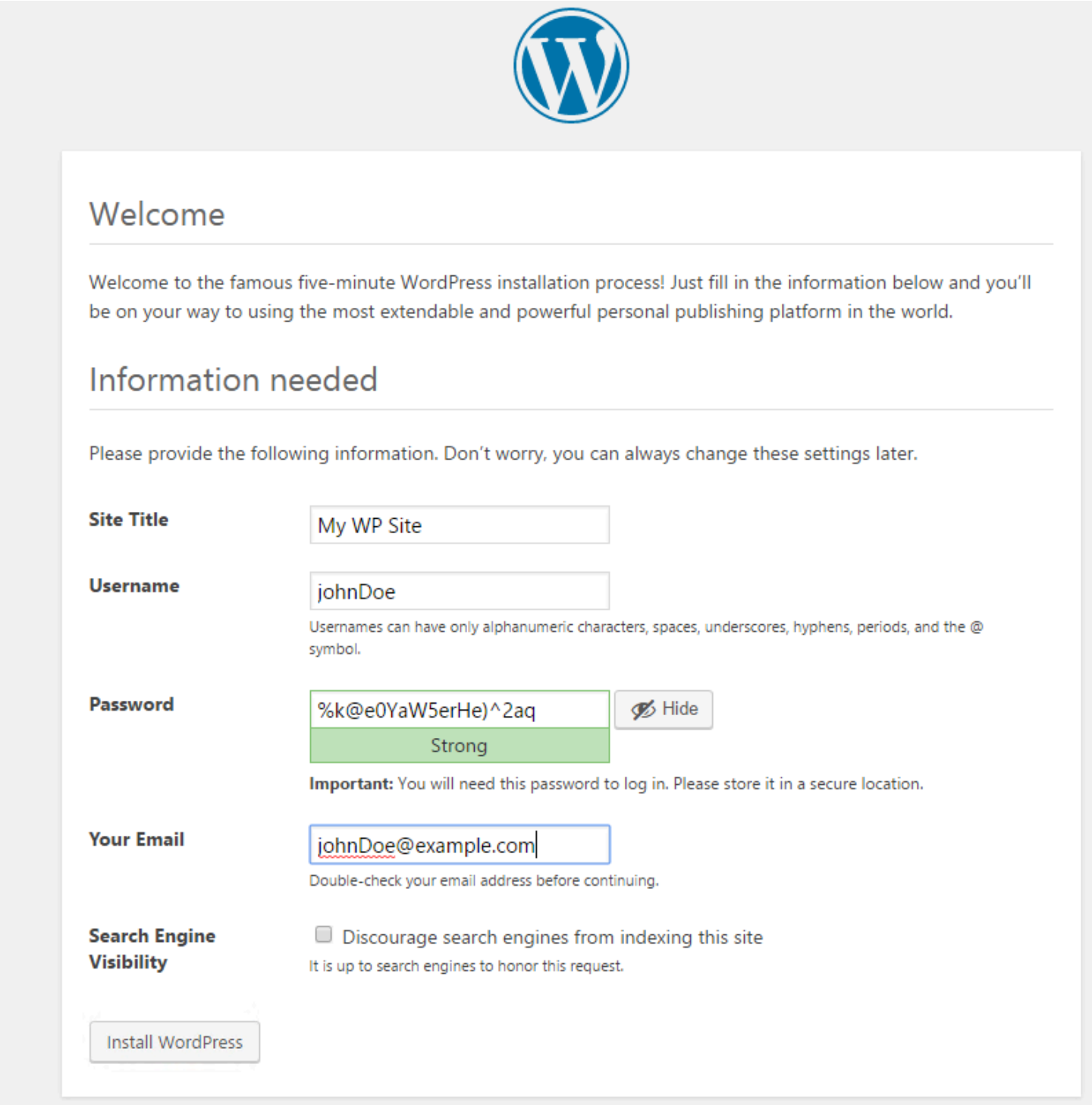
c. Click **Submit** when finished.

Validate the Application Deployment

Navigate to the endpoint (LoadBalancerCName) of the previously-created load balancer, with the WordPress deployed path: /WordPress. For example:

```
http://stack-ID-FOR-ELB.us-east-1.elb.amazonaws.com/WordPress
```

You should see a page like this:



Tear Down the High Availability Deployment

To tear down the deployment, you submit the Delete Stack CT against the HA Two-Tier stack, and the S3 bucket, and you can request that RDS snapshots be deleted (they are deleted automatically

after ten days, but they do cost a small amount while there). Gather the stack IDs for the HA stack and the S3 bucket and then follow these steps. See Stack | Delete.

Console Tutorial: Deploying a Tier and Tie WordPress Website

This section describes how to deploy a high availability (HA) WordPress site into an AMS environment using the AMS console. This set of instructions includes an example of creating the necessary WordPress CodeDeploy-compatible package (e.g. zip) file. The provisioning of the resources follows an order that allows you to tie them together to form "tiers."

> **Note**
>
> This deployment walkthrough is designed for use with an AMZN Linux OS.
> The essential variable parameters are notated as *`replaceable`*; however, you may want to modify other parameters to suit your situation.

Summary of tasks and required RFCs:

1. Create the infrastructure:
   a. Create a MySQL RDS database cluster
   b. Create a load balancer
   c. Create an Auto scaling group and tie it to the load balancer
   d. Create an S3 bucket for CodeDeploy applications
2. Create a WordPress application bundle (does not require an RFC)
3. Deploy the WordPress application bundle with CodeDeploy:
   a. Create a CodeDeploy application
   b. Create a CodeDeploy deployment group
   c. Upload your WordPress application bundle to the S3 bucket (does not require an RFC)
   d. Deploy the CodeDeploy application
4. Validate the deployment
5. Tear down the deployment

Descriptions for all CT options, including ChangeTypeId can be found in AMS Change Type Reference.

Creating an RFC using the Console (Basics)

These are some steps that you must follow each time you create an RFC using the Console.

1. Click **RFCs** in the left navigation pane to open the RFCs list page, then click **Create RFC**.

   The **Create RFC** page opens.
2. Choose either **Browse change types** (the default) or **Choose by category**.
3. **Browse change types**:

   a. Click on a quick create option to begin an RFC with one of the most used change types.

      The **General configuration** area for that change type opens, the subject line is filled in. To see the change type details, open the area at the top of the page.

   b. Use the **All change types area**.

      Filter, toggle between a cards or table view, or sort the change types. When you find the one you want, select it and click **Create RFC** at the top of the page.

      The **General configuration** area for that change type opens, the subject line is filled in. To see the change type details, open the area at the top of the page.
4. **Choose by category**:

   a. Select the appropriate Category, Subcategory, Item, and Operation.

      The change type details box appears at the bottom of the page.

   b. Click **Create RFC** at the bottom of the page.

   c. The **General configuration** area for that change type opens, the subject line is filled in. To see the change type details, open the area at the top of the page.
5. To ensure certain people get notifications of the RFC progress, fill in the **Email addresses**. To add details about the change type, fill in the **Description**. Open the **Additional configuration** area to add more specifics about the RFC.
6. For **Scheduling**select either **Execute this change ASAP** or **Schedule this change**. If you select **Execute this change ASAP**, your RFC executes as soon as approvals have passed. If you select **Schedule this change type**, a pick calendar, time, and time zone, appears and your RFC starts, after submission, as scheduled.

7. In the **Execution configuration** area, configure the change type parameters. To see optional parameters, open the **Additional configuration** area.
8. When ready, click **Run**.

Creating the Infrastructure

Log in to the AWS Console for the target AMS account and then the AMS Console for the account.

The following procedures describe creating an RDS database, a load balancer, and an Auto Scaling group in such a manner that you use the resource IDs to build the infrastructure.

Create an RDS Stack

See RDS stack | Create.

Create an ELB Stack

Launch a public ELB.

REQUIRED DATA:

- `VpcId`: The VPC you are using, this should be the same as the previously used VPC.
- `ELBSubnetIds`: An array of subnets across which the load balancer will distribute traffic. Choose either public or private subnets. Find Subnet IDs with the For the AMS SKMS API reference, see the **Reports** tab in the AWS Artifact Console. operation (CLI: list-subnet-summaries) or in the AMS Console VPCs -> VPC details page.
- `VpcId`: The VPC you are using, this should be the same as the previously used VPC.

1. On the **Create RFC** page, select the category **Deployment**, subcategory **Advanced Stack Components**, item **Load balancer (ELB) stack**, and click **Create**. Choose **Advanced** and accept all defaults (including those with no value) except those shown next.

```
Subject:                        WP-ELB-RFC
ELBSubnetIds:                   PUBLIC_AZ1
                              PUBLIC_AZ2
ELBScheme                       true
ELBCookieExpirationPeriod       600
VpcId:                          VPC_ID
Name:                           WP-Public-ELB
```

2. Click **Submit** when finished.

Create an Auto Scaling Group Stack

Launch an Auto scaling group.

REQUIRED DATA:

- `VpcId`: The VPC you are using, this should be the same as the previously used VPC.
- `AMI-ID`: This value determines what kind of EC2 instances your Auto Scaling group (ASG) will spin up. Be sure to select an AMI in your account that starts with "customer-" and is of the operating system that you want. Find AMI IDs with the For the AMS SKMS API reference, see the **Reports** tab in the AWS Artifact Console. operation (CLI: list-amis) or in the AMS Console VPCs -> VPCs details page. This walkthrough is for ASGs configured to use a Linux AMI.
- `ASGLoadBalancerNames`: The load balancer that you previously created--find the name by looking at the EC2 Console -> Load Balancers (in the left nav). Note this is not the "Name" that you specified when you created the ELB previously.

1. On the **Create RFC** page, select the category **Deployment**, subcategory **Advanced Stack Components**, item **Auto scaling group**, and click **Create**. Choose **Advanced** and accept all defaults (including those with no value) except those shown next.

> **Note**
>
> Specify the latest AMS AMI. Specify the previously-created ELB.

```
Subject:                        WP-ASG-RFC
ASGSubnetIds:                   PRIVATE_AZ1
                                                PRIVATE_AZ2
ASGAmiId:                       AMI_ID
VpcId:                          VPC_ID
Name:                           WP_ASG
ASGLoadBalancerNames:           ELB_NAME
ASGUserData:
#!/bin/bash
```

```
REGION=$(curl 169.254.169.254/latest/meta-data/placement/availability-zone/ | sed
 's/[a-z]$//')
yum -y install ruby httpd
chkconfig httpd on
service httpd start
touch /var/www/html/status
cd /tmp
curl -O https://aws-codedeploy-$REGION.s3.amazonaws.com/latest/install
chmod +x ./install
./install auto
chkconfig codedeploy-agent on
service codedeploy-agent start
```

2. Click **Submit** when finished.

Create an S3 Stack

Launch an S3 bucket. The S3 bucket is where you upload the application bundle you created.

REQUIRED DATA:

- `VPC-ID`: This value determines where your S3 Bucket will be, this should be the same as the previously used VPC.
- `AccessControl`: Pre-set AccessControl list (ACL) options are `Private`, and `PublicRead`. For more information, see Amazon Simple Storage Service Canned ACL.
- `BucketName`: This value sets the S3 Bucket name, you use it to upload your application bundle. It must be unique across the region of the account and cannot include upper-case letters. Including your account ID as part of the BucketName is not a requirement but makes it easier to identify the bucket later. To see what S3 bucket names exist in the account, go to the Amazon S3 Console for your account.

1. On the **Create RFC** page, select the category **Deployment**, subcategory **Advanced Stack Components**, item **S3 storage**, and click **Create**.

   You can leave the default parameter option at **Basic** to accept the defaults as described. To set different values, choose **Advanced**.

> **Note**
>
> The bucket deployed with this change type allows full read/write access to the whole account, new change types may be needed to allow more restricted access permissions.

```
Subject:            S3-Bucket-RFC
BucketName:         ACCOUNT_ID-codedeploy-bundles
AccessControl:      Private

VpcId:              VPC_ID
Name:               S3BucketForWP
```

2. Click **Submit** when finished.

Create a WordPress CodeDeploy Bundle

The section provides an example of creating an application deployment bundle.

1. Download WordPress, extract the files and create a ./scripts directory.

   Linux command:

   ```
   wget https://github.com/WordPress/WordPress/archive/master.zip
   ```

   Windows: Paste `https://github.com/WordPress/WordPress/archive/master.zip` into a browser window and download the zip file.

   Create a temporary directory in which to assemble the package.

   Linux:

   ```
   mkdir /tmp/WordPress
   ```

   Windows: Create a "WordPress" directory, you will use the directory path later.

2. Extract the WordPress source to the "WordPress" directory and create a ./scripts directory.

   Linux:

```
unzip master.zip -d /tmp/WordPress_Temp
cp -paf /tmp/WordPress_Temp/WordPress-master/* /tmp/WordPress
rm -rf /tmp/WordPress_Temp
rm -f master
cd /tmp/WordPress
mkdir scripts
```

Windows: Go to the "WordPress" directory that you created and create a "scripts" directory there.

If you are in a Windows environment, be sure to set the break type for the script files to Unix (LF). In Notepad ++, this is an option at the bottom right of the window.

3. Create the CodeDeploy **appspec.yml** file, in the WordPress directory (if copying the example, check the indentation, each space counts). IMPORTANT: Ensure that the "source" path is correct for copying the WordPress files (in this case, in your WordPress directory) to the expected destination (/var/www/html/WordPress). In the example, the appspec.yml file is in the directory with the WordPress files, so only "/" is needed. Also, even if you used a RHEL AMI for your Auto Scaling group, leave the "os: linux" line as-is. Example appspec.yml file:

```
version: 0.0
os: linux
files:
  - source: /
    destination: /var/www/html/WordPress
hooks:
  BeforeInstall:
    - location: scripts/install_dependencies.sh
      timeout: 300
      runas: root
  AfterInstall:
    - location: scripts/config_wordpress.sh
      timeout: 300
      runas: root
  ApplicationStart:
    - location: scripts/start_server.sh
      timeout: 300
      runas: root
  ApplicationStop:
    - location: scripts/stop_server.sh
      timeout: 300
```

```
      runas: root
```

4. Create bash file scripts in the WordPress ./scripts directory.

   First, create `config_wordpress.sh` with the following content (if you prefer, you can edit the wp-config.php file directly).

   > **Note**
   >
   > Replace *DBName* with the value given in the HA Stack RFC (for example, `wordpress`).
   > Replace *DB_MasterUsername* with the `MasterUsername` value given in the HA Stack RFC (for example, `admin`).
   > Replace *DB_MasterUserPassword* with the `MasterUserPassword` value given in the HA Stack RFC (for example, `p4ssw0rd`).
   > Replace *DB_ENDPOINT* with the endpoint DNS name in the execution outputs of the HA Stack RFC (for example, `srt1cz23n45sfg.clgvd67uvydk.us-east-1.rds.amazonaws.com`). You can find this with the GetRfc operation (CLI: get-rfc --rfc-id RFC_ID) or in the AMS Console RFC details page for the HA Stack RFC that you previously submitted.

```
#!/bin/bash
chmod -R 755 /var/www/html/WordPress
cp /var/www/html/WordPress/wp-config-sample.php /var/www/html/WordPress/wp-
config.php
cd /var/www/html/WordPress
sed -i "s/database_name_here/DBName/g" wp-config.php
sed -i "s/username_here/DB_MasterUsername/g" wp-config.php
sed -i "s/password_here/DB_MasterUserPassword/g" wp-config.php
sed -i "s/localhost/DB_ENDPOINT/g" wp-config.php
```

5. In the same directory create `install_dependencies.sh` with the following content:

```
#!/bin/bash
yum install -y php
yum install -y php-mysql
yum install -y mysql
service httpd restart
```

> **Note**
>
> HTTPS is installed as part of the user data at launch in order to allow health checks to work from the start.

6. In the same directory create `start_server.sh` with the following content:

   - For Amazon Linux instances, use this:

   ```
   #!/bin/bash
   service httpd start
   ```

   - For RHEL instances, use this (the extra commands are policies that allow SELINUX to accept WordPress):

   ```
   #!/bin/bash
   setsebool -P  httpd_can_network_connect_db 1
   setsebool -P  httpd_can_network_connect 1
   chcon -t httpd_sys_rw_content_t /var/www/html/WordPress/wp-content -R
   restorecon -Rv /var/www/html
   service httpd start
   ```

7. In the same directory create `stop_server.sh` with the following content:

   ```
   #!/bin/bash
   service httpd stop
   ```

8. Create the zip bundle.

   Linux:

   ```
   $ cd /tmp/WordPress
   $ zip -r wordpress.zip .
   ```

   Windows: Go to your "WordPress" directory and select all of the files and create a zip file, be sure to name it wordpress.zip.

Deploy the WordPress Application Bundle with CodeDeploy

The CodeDeploy is an AWS deployment service that automates application deployments to Amazon EC2 instances. This part of the process involves creating a CodeDeploy application, creating a CodeDeploy deployment group, and then deploying the application using CodeDeploy.

Create a CodeDeploy Application

The CodeDeploy application is simply a name or container used by AWS CodeDeploy to ensure that the correct revision, deployment configuration, and deployment group are referenced during a deployment. The deployment configuration, in this case, is the WordPress bundle that you previously created.

REQUIRED DATA:

- `VpcId`: The VPC that you are using, this should be the same as the previously used VPC.
- `CodeDeployApplicationName`: Must be unique in the account. Look at the CodeDeploy Console to check for existing application names.

1. Create the CodeDeploy Application for WordPress

   On the **Create RFC** page, select the category **Deployment**, subcategory **Applications**, item **CodeDeploy application** and operation **Create** from the RFC CT pick list. Choose **Basic** and set the values as shown. Click **Submit** when finished.

   ```
   Subject:                    CD-WP-App-RFC
   CodeDeployApplicationName:  WordPress
   VpcId:                      VPC_ID
   Name:                       WP-CD-App
   ```

2. Click **Submit** when finished.

Create a CodeDeploy Deployment Group

Create the CodeDeploy deployment group.

A CodeDeploy deployment group defines a set of individual instances targeted for a deployment.

REQUIRED DATA:

- `VpcId`: The VPC that you are using, this should be the same as the previously used VPC.
- `CodeDeployApplicationName`: Use the value you previously created.
- `CodeDeployAutoScalingGroups`: Use the name of the Auto Scaling group that you created previously.
- `CodeDeployDeploymentGroupName`: A name for the deployment group. This name must be unique for each application associated with the deployment group.
- `CodeDeployServiceRoleArn`: Use the formula given in the example.

1. On the **Create RFC** page, select the Category **Deployment**, subcategory **Applications**, item **CodeDeploy deployment group**, and operation **Create** from the RFC CT pick list. Choose **Advanced** and set the values as shown (only a **Subject** is needed for the RFC). Click **Submit** when finished.

   > **Note**
   >
   > Reference the CodeDeploy service role ARN in this format `"arn:aws:iam::085398962942:role/aws-codedeploy-role"` and use the previously-created Auto scaling group name for "ASG_NAME".

   ```
   Description:                    Create CodeDeploy Deployment Group for WP
   CodeDeployApplicationName:      WordPress
   CodeDeployAutoScalingGroups:    ASG_NAME
   CodeDeployDeploymentConfigName: CodeDeployDefault.HalfAtATime
   CodeDeployDeploymentGroupName:  WP CD Group
   CodeDeployServiceRoleArn:       arn:aws:iam::ACCOUNT_ID:role/aws-codedeploy-role

   VpcId:                          VPC_ID
   Name:                           WP Deployment Group
   ```

2. Click **Submit** when finished.

Upload the WordPress Application

You automatically have access to any S3 bucket instance that you create. You can access it through your Bastions (see Accessing Instances), or through the S3 console, and upload the CodeDeploy

bundle. The bundle needs to be in place in order to continue deploying the stack. The example uses the bucket name previously created.

You can use this AWS command to zip up the bundle:

```
aws s3 cp wordpress/wordpress.zip s3://ACCOUNT_ID-codedeploy-bundles/
```

Deploy the WordPress Application with CodeDeploy

Deploy the CodeDeploy application.

REQUIRED DATA:

- `VPC-ID`: The VPC you are using, this should be the same as the previously used VPC.
- `CodeDeployApplicationName`: Use the name for the CodeDeploy application that you previously created.
- `CodeDeployDeploymentGroupName`: Use the name of the CodeDeploy deployment group that you created previously.
- `S3Location` (where you uploaded the application bundle): `S3Bucket`: The BucketName that you previously created, `S3BundleType` and `S3Key`: The type of, and name of, the bundle that you put on your S3 store.

1. Deploy the WordPress CodeDeploy Application Bundle

   On the **Create RFC** page, select the category **Deployment**, subcategory **Applications**, item **CodeDeploy application**, and operation **Deploy** from the RFC CT pick list. Choose **Basic** and set the values as shown. Click **Submit** when finished.

   > **Note**
   >
   > Reference the CodeDeploy application, CodeDeploy deployment group, S3 bucket and bundle previously created.

   ```
   Subject:                          WP-CD-Deploy-RFC
   CodeDeployApplicationName:        WordPress
   CodeDeployDeploymentGroupName:    WPCDGroup
   RevisionType:                     S3
   ```

```
S3Bucket:                    ACCOUNT_ID-codedeploy-bundles
S3BundleType:                zip
S3Key:                       wordpress.zip
VpcId:                       VPC_ID
Name:                        WordPress
```

2. Click **Submit** when finished.

Validate the Application Deployment

Navigate to the endpoint (ELB CName) of the previously-created load balancer, with the WordPress deployed path: /WordPress. For example:

```
http://stack-ID-FOR-ELB.us-east-1.elb.amazonaws.com/WordPress
```

Tear Down the Application Deployment

To tear down the deployment, you submit the Delete Stack CT against the RDS database stack, the application load balancer, the Auto Scaling group, the S3 bucket, and the Code Deploy application and group--six RFCs in all. Additionally, you can submit a service request for the RDS snapshots to be deleted (they are deleted automatically after ten days, but they do cost a small amount while there). Gather the stack IDs for all and then follow these steps. See Stack | Delete.

CLI Tutorial: High Availability Two-Tier Stack (Linux/RHEL)

This section describes how to deploy a high availability (HA) two-tier stack into an AMS environment using the AMS CLI.

> **Note**
>
> This deployment walkthrough has been tested in AMZN Linux and RHEL environments.

Summary of tasks and required RFCs:

1. Create infrastructure (HA two-tier stack)
2. Create an S3 bucket for CodeDeploy applications
3. Create the WordPress application bundle and upload it to the S3 bucket

4. Deploy the application with CodeDeploy
5. Access the WordPress site and log in to validate the deployment

Before You Begin

The Deployment | Advanced Stack Components | High Availability Two Tier Stack Advanced | Create CT creates an Auto Scaling group, a load balancer, a database, and a CodeDeploy application name and deployment group (with the same name that you give the application). For information on CodeDeploy see What is CodeDeploy?

This walkthrough uses a High Availability Two-Tier Stack (Advanced) RFC that includes UserData and also describes how to create a WordPress bundle that CodeDeploy can deploy.

The `UserData` shown in the example gets instance metadata such as instance ID, region, etc, from within a running instance by querying the EC2 instance metadata service available at http://169.254.169.254/latest/meta-data/. This line in the user data script: `REGION=$(curl 169.254.169.254/latest/meta-data/placement/availability-zone/ | sed 's/[a-z]$//')`, retrieves the availability zone name from the meta-data service into the $REGION variable for our supported regions, and uses it to complete the URL for the S3 bucket where the CodeDeploy agent is downloaded. The 169.254.169.254 IP is routable only within the VPC (all VPCs can query the service). For information about the service, see Instance Metadata and User Data. Note also that scripts entered as UserData are executed as the "root" user and do not need to use the "sudo" command.

This walkthrough leaves the following parameters at the default value (shown):

- Auto Scaling group: `Cooldown=300, DesiredCapacity=2, EBSOptimized=false, HealthCheckGracePeriod=600, IAMInstanceProfile=customer-mc-ec2-instance-profile, InstanceDetailedMonitoring=true, InstanceRootVolumeIops=0, InstanceRootVolumeType=standard, InstanceType=m3.medium, MaxInstances=2, MinInstances=2, ScaleDownPolicyCooldown=300, ScaleDownPolicyEvaluationPeriods=4, ScaleDownPolicyPeriod=60, ScaleDownPolicyScalingAdjustment=-1, ScaleDownPolicyStatistic=Average, ScaleDownPolicyThreshold=35, ScaleMetricName=CPUUtilization, ScaleUpPolicyCooldown=60, ScaleUpPolicyEvaluationPeriods=2, ScaleUpPolicyPeriod=60, ScaleUpPolicyScalingAdjustment=2, ScaleUpPolicyStatistic=Average, ScaleUpPolicyThreshold=75`.

- Load Balancer: `HealthCheckInterval=30, HealthCheckTimeout=5`.
- Database: `BackupRetentionPeriod=7, Backups=true, InstanceType=db.m3.medium, IOPS=0, MultiAZ=true, PreferredBackupWindow=22:00-23:00, PreferredMaintenanceWindow=wed:03:32-wed:04:02, StorageEncrypted=false, StorageEncryptionKey="", StorageType=gp2`.
- Application: `DeploymentConfigName=CodeDeployDefault.OneAtATime`.
- S3 bucket: `AccessControl=Private`.

ADDITIONAL SETTINGS:

`RequestedStartTime` and `RequestedEndTime` if you want to schedule your RFC: You can use Time.is to determine the correct UTC time. The examples provided must be adjusted appropriately. An RFC cannot proceed if the start time has passed. Alternatively, you can leave those values off to create an ASAP RFC that executes as soon as approvals are passed.

> **Note**
>
> There are many parameters that you might choose to set differently than as shown. The values for those parameters shown in the example have been tested but may not be right for you.

Create the Infrastructure

Gathering the following data before you begin will make the deployment go more quickly.

REQUIRED DATA HA STACK:

- AutoScalingGroup:
  - `UserData`: This value is provided in this tutorial. It includes commands to set up the resource for CodeDeploy and start the CodeDeploy agent.
  - `AMI-ID`: This value determines what kind of EC2 instances your Auto Scaling group (ASG) will spin up. Be sure to select an AMI in your account that starts with "customer-" and is of the operating system that you want. Find AMI IDs with the For the AMS SKMS API reference, see the **Reports** tab in the AWS Artifact Console. operation (CLI: list-amis) or in the AMS Console VPCs -> VPCs details page. This walkthrough is for ASGs configured to use a Linux AMI.

- Database:
  - These parameters, `DBEngine`, `EngineVersion`, and `LicenseModel` should be set according to your situation though the values shown in the example have been tested.
  - These parameters, `RDSSubnetIds`, `DBName`, `MasterUsername`, and `MasterUserPassword` are required when deploying the application bundle. For RDSSubnetIds, use two Private subnets.
- LoadBalancer:
  - These parameters, `DBEngine`, `EngineVersion`, and `LicenseModel` should be set according to your situation though the values shown in the example have been tested.
  - `ELBSubnetIds`: Use two Public subnets.
- Application: The `ApplicationName` value sets the CodeDeploy application name and CodeDeploy deployment group name. You use it to deploy your application. It must be unique in the account. To check your account for CodeDeploy names, see the CodeDeploy Console. The example uses "WordPress" but, if you will use that value, make sure that it is not already in use.

This procedure utilizes the High availability two-tier stack (advanced) CT (ct-06mjngx5flwto) and the Create S3 storage CT (ct-1a68ck03fn98r). From your authenticated account, follow these steps at the command line.

1. Launch the infrastructure stack.

   a. Output the execution parameters JSON schema for the HA two tier stack CT to a file in your current folder named CreateStackParams.json.

   ```
   aws amscm get-change-type-version --change-type-id "ct-06mjngx5flwto"
    --query "ChangeTypeVersion.ExecutionInputSchema" --output text >
    CreateStackParams.json
   ```

   b. Modify the schema. Replace the *`variables`* as appropriate. For example, use the OS that you want for the EC2 instances the ASG will create. Record the `ApplicationName` as you will use it later to deploy the application. Note that you can add up to 50 tags.

   ```
   {
   "Description":      "HA two tier stack for WordPress",
   "Name":             "WordPressStack",
   "TimeoutInMinutes":  360,
   "Tags": [
   ```

```
        {
            "Key": "ApplicationName",
            "Value": "WordPress"
        }
    ],
"AutoScalingGroup": {
            "AmiId":    "AMI-ID",
            "UserData": "#!/bin/bash \n
            REGION=$(curl 169.254.169.254/latest/meta-data/placement/
availability-zone/ | sed 's/[a-z]$//') \n
            yum -y install ruby httpd \n
            chkconfig httpd on \n
            service httpd start \n
            touch /var/www/html/status \n
            cd /tmp \n
            curl -O https://aws-codedeploy-$REGION.s3.amazonaws.com/latest/
install \n
            chmod +x ./install \n
            ./install auto \n
            chkconfig codedeploy-agent on \n
            service codedeploy-agent start"
    },
    "LoadBalancer": {
        "Public":               true,
        "HealthCheckTarget":    "HTTP:80/status"
    },
    "Database":     {
        "DBEngine":             "MySQL",
        "DBName":               "wordpress",
        "EngineVersion":        "8.0.16 ",
        "LicenseModel":         "general-public-license",
        "MasterUsername":       "admin",
        "MasterUserPassword":   "p4ssw0rd"
    },
    "Application":  {
    "ApplicationName":  "WordPress"
        }
}
```

c. Output the CreateRfc JSON template to a file in your current folder named CreateStackRfc.json:

```
aws amscm create-rfc --generate-cli-skeleton > CreateStackRfc.json
```

d. Modify the RFC template as follows and save it, you can delete and replace the contents. Note that `RequestedStartTime` and `RequestedEndTime` are now optional; excluding them creates an ASAP RFC that executes as soon as it is approved (which usually happens automatically). To submit a scheduled RFC, add those values.

```
{
"ChangeTypeVersion":    "3.0",
"ChangeTypeId":         "ct-06mjngx5flwto",
"Title":                "HA-Stack-For-WP-RFC"
}
```

e. Create the RFC, specifying the CreateStackRfc.json file and the CreateStackParams.json execution parameters file:

```
aws amscm create-rfc --cli-input-json file://CreateStackRfc.json --execution-
parameters file://CreateStackParams.json
```

You receive the RFC ID in the response. Save the ID for subsequent steps.

f. Submit the RFC:

```
aws amscm submit-rfc --rfc-id  RFC_ID
```

If the RFC succeeds, you receive no output.

g. To check RFC status, run

```
aws amscm get-rfc --rfc-id RFC_ID
```

Keep note of the RFC ID.

2. Launch an S3 bucket

Gathering the following data before you begin will make the deployment go more quickly.

REQUIRED DATA S3 BUCKET:

- `VPC-ID`: This value determines where your S3 Bucket will be. Use the same VPC ID that you used previously.

- `BucketName`: This value sets the S3 Bucket name, you use it to upload your application bundle. It must be unique across the region of the account and cannot include upper-case letters. Including your account ID as part of the BucketName is not a requirement but makes it easier to identify the bucket later. To see what S3 bucket names exist in the account, go to the Amazon S3 Console for your account.

a. Output the execution parameters JSON schema for the S3 storage create CT to a JSON file named CreateS3StoreParams.json.

```
aws amscm get-change-type-version --change-type-id "ct-1a68ck03fn98r"
 --query "ChangeTypeVersion.ExecutionInputSchema" --output text >
 CreateS3StoreParams.json
```

b. Modify the schema as follows, you can delete and replace the contents. Replace *VPC_ID* appropriately. The values in the example have been tested, but may not be right for you.

> **Tip**
>
> The `BucketName` must be unique across the region of the account and cannot include upper-case letters. Including your account ID as part of the BucketName is not a requirement but makes it easier to identify the bucket later. To see what S3 bucket names exist in the account, go to the Amazon S3 Console for your account.

```
{
"Description":      "S3BucketForWordPressBundle",
"VpcId":            "VPC_ID",
"StackTemplateId":  "stm-s2b72beb000000000",
"Name":             "S3BucketForWP",
"TimeoutInMinutes":  60,
"Parameters":   {
    "AccessControl":    "Private",
    "BucketName":       "ACCOUNT_ID-BUCKET_NAME"
    }
}
```

c. Output the JSON template for CreateRfc to a file, in your current folder, named CreateS3StoreRfc.json:

```
aws amscm create-rfc --generate-cli-skeleton > CreateS3StoreRfc.json
```

d. Modify and save the CreateS3StoreRfc.json file, you can delete and replace the contents. Note that `RequestedStartTime` and `RequestedEndTime` are now optional; excluding them creates an ASAP RFC that executes as soon as it is approved (which usually happens automatically). To submit a scheduled RFC, add those values.

```
{
"ChangeTypeVersion":    "1.0",
"ChangeTypeId":         "ct-1a68ck03fn98r",
"Title":                "S3-Stack-For-WP-RFC"
}
```

e. Create the RFC, specifying the CreateS3StoreRfc.json file and the CreateS3StoreParams.json execution parameters file:

```
aws amscm create-rfc --cli-input-json file://CreateS3StoreRfc.json  --
execution-parameters file://CreateS3StoreParams.json
```

You receive the RfcId of the new RFC in the response. Save the ID for subsequent steps.

f. Submit the RFC:

```
aws amscm submit-rfc --rfc-id RFC_ID
```

If the RFC succeeds, you receive no output.

g. To check RFC status, run

```
aws amscm get-rfc --rfc-id RFC_ID
```

Create, Upload, and Deploy the Application

First, create a WordPress application bundle, and then use the CodeDeploy CTs to create and deploy the application.

1. Download WordPress, extract the files and create a ./scripts directory.

   Linux command:

```
wget https://github.com/WordPress/WordPress/archive/master.zip
```

Windows: Paste `https://github.com/WordPress/WordPress/archive/master.zip` into a browser window and download the zip file.

Create a temporary directory in which to assemble the package.

Linux:

```
mkdir /tmp/WordPress
```

Windows: Create a "WordPress" directory, you will use the directory path later.

2. Extract the WordPress source to the "WordPress" directory and create a ./scripts directory.

   Linux:

   ```
   unzip master.zip -d /tmp/WordPress_Temp
   cp -paf /tmp/WordPress_Temp/WordPress-master/* /tmp/WordPress
   rm -rf /tmp/WordPress_Temp
   rm -f master
   cd /tmp/WordPress
   mkdir scripts
   ```

   Windows: Go to the "WordPress" directory that you created and create a "scripts" directory there.

   If you are in a Windows environment, be sure to set the break type for the script files to Unix (LF). In Notepad ++, this is an option at the bottom right of the window.

3. Create the CodeDeploy **appspec.yml** file, in the WordPress directory (if copying the example, check the indentation, each space counts). IMPORTANT: Ensure that the "source" path is correct for copying the WordPress files (in this case, in your WordPress directory) to the expected destination (/var/www/html/WordPress). In the example, the appspec.yml file is in the directory with the WordPress files, so only "/" is needed. Also, even if you used a RHEL AMI for your Auto Scaling group, leave the "os: linux" line as-is. Example appspec.yml file:

   ```
   version: 0.0
   os: linux
   files:
   ```

```
  - source: /
    destination: /var/www/html/WordPress
hooks:
  BeforeInstall:
    - location: scripts/install_dependencies.sh
      timeout: 300
      runas: root
  AfterInstall:
    - location: scripts/config_wordpress.sh
      timeout: 300
      runas: root
  ApplicationStart:
    - location: scripts/start_server.sh
      timeout: 300
      runas: root
  ApplicationStop:
    - location: scripts/stop_server.sh
      timeout: 300
      runas: root
```

4. Create bash file scripts in the WordPress ./scripts directory.

   First, create `config_wordpress.sh` with the following content (if you prefer, you can edit the wp-config.php file directly).

   Note

   Replace *DBName* with the value given in the HA Stack RFC (for example, `wordpress`).
   Replace *DB_MasterUsername* with the `MasterUsername` value given in the HA Stack RFC (for example, `admin`).
   Replace *DB_MasterUserPassword* with the `MasterUserPassword` value given in the HA Stack RFC (for example, `p4ssw0rd`).
   Replace *DB_ENDPOINT* with the endpoint DNS name in the execution outputs of the HA Stack RFC (for example, `srt1cz23n45sfg.clgvd67uvydk.us-east-1.rds.amazonaws.com`). You can find this with the GetRfc operation (CLI: get-rfc --rfc-id RFC_ID) or in the AMS Console RFC details page for the HA Stack RFC that you previously submitted.

```
#!/bin/bash
```

```
chmod -R 755 /var/www/html/WordPress
cp /var/www/html/WordPress/wp-config-sample.php /var/www/html/WordPress/wp-
config.php
cd /var/www/html/WordPress
sed -i "s/database_name_here/DBName/g" wp-config.php
sed -i "s/username_here/DB_MasterUsername/g" wp-config.php
sed -i "s/password_here/DB_MasterUserPassword/g" wp-config.php
sed -i "s/localhost/DB_ENDPOINT/g" wp-config.php
```

5. In the same directory create `install_dependencies.sh` with the following content:

```
#!/bin/bash
yum install -y php
yum install -y php-mysql
yum install -y mysql
service httpd restart
```

> **Note**
>
> HTTPS is installed as part of the user data at launch in order to allow health checks to work from the start.

6. In the same directory create `start_server.sh` with the following content:

   - For Amazon Linux instances, use this:

   ```
   #!/bin/bash
   service httpd start
   ```

   - For RHEL instances, use this (the extra commands are policies that allow SELINUX to accept WordPress):

   ```
   #!/bin/bash
   setsebool -P  httpd_can_network_connect_db 1
   setsebool -P  httpd_can_network_connect 1
   chcon -t httpd_sys_rw_content_t /var/www/html/WordPress/wp-content -R
   restorecon -Rv /var/www/html
   service httpd start
   ```

7. In the same directory create `stop_server.sh` with the following content:

```
#!/bin/bash
service httpd stop
```

8. Create the zip bundle.

   Linux:

   ```
   $ cd /tmp/WordPress
   $ zip -r wordpress.zip .
   ```

   Windows: Go to your "WordPress" directory and select all of the files and create a zip file, be sure to name it wordpress.zip.

1. Upload the application bundle to the S3 bucket.

   The bundle needs to be in place in order to continue deploying the stack.

   You automatically have access to any S3 bucket instance that you create. You can access it through your bastions, or through the S3 console, and upload the WordPress bundle with drag-and-drop or browsing to and selecting the zip file.

   You can also use the following command in a shell window; be sure that you have the correct path to the zip file:

   ```
   aws s3 cp wordpress.zip s3://BUCKET_NAME/
   ```

2. Deploy the WordPress application bundle.

   Gathering the following data before you begin will make the deployment go more quickly.

   REQUIRED DATA:

   - `VPC-ID`: This value determines where your S3 Bucket will be. Use the same VPC ID that you used previously.
   - `CodeDeployApplicationName` and `CodeDeployApplicationName`: The `ApplicationName` value you used in the HA 2-Tier Stack RFC set the CodeDeployApplicationName and the CodeDeployDeploymentGroupName. The example uses "WordPress" but you may have used a different value.

- `S3Location`: For `S3Bucket`, use the `BucketName` that you previously created. The `S3BundleType` and `S3Key` are from the bundle that you put on your S3 store.

a. Output the execution parameters JSON schema for the CodeDeploy application deploy CT to a JSON file named DeployCDAppParams.json.

```
aws amscm get-change-type-version --change-type-id "ct-2edc3sd1sqmrb"
 --query "ChangeTypeVersion.ExecutionInputSchema" --output text >
 DeployCDAppParams.json
```

b. Modify the schema as follows and save it as, you can delete and replace the contents.

```
{
"Description":                          "DeployWPCDApp",
"VpcId":                                "VPC_ID",
"Name":                                 "WordPressCDAppDeploy",
"TimeoutInMinutes":                     60,
"Parameters":   {
    "CodeDeployApplicationName":                "WordPress",
    "CodeDeployDeploymentGroupName":            "WordPress",
    "CodeDeployIgnoreApplicationStopFailures":   false,
    "CodeDeployRevision": {
      "RevisionType": "S3",
      "S3Location": {
        "S3Bucket":     "BUCKET_NAME",
        "S3BundleType": "zip",
        "S3Key":        "wordpress.zip" }
        }
    }
}
```

c. Output the JSON template for CreateRfc to a file, in your current folder, named DeployCDAppRfc.json:

```
aws amscm create-rfc --generate-cli-skeleton > DeployCDAppRfc.json
```

d. Modify and save the DeployCDAppRfc.json file, you can delete and replace the contents. Note that `RequestedStartTime` and `RequestedEndTime` are now optional; excluding them creates an ASAP RFC that executes as soon as it is approved (which usually happens automatically). To submit a scheduled RFC, add those values.

```
{
"ChangeTypeVersion":    "1.0",
"ChangeTypeId":         "ct-2edc3sd1sqmrb",
"Title":                "CD-Deploy-For-WP-RFC"
}
```

e. Create the RFC, specifying the DeployCDAppRfc file and the DeployCDAppParams execution parameters file:

```
aws amscm create-rfc --cli-input-json file://DeployCDAppRfc.json  --execution-
parameters file://DeployCDAppParams.json
```

You receive the RfcId of the new RFC in the response. Save the ID for subsequent steps.

f. Submit the RFC:

```
aws amscm submit-rfc --rfc-id RFC_ID
```

If the RFC succeeds, you receive no output.

g. To check RFC status, run

```
aws amscm get-rfc --rfc-id RFC_ID
```

Validate the Application Deployment

Navigate to the endpoint (ELB CName) of the previously-created load balancer, with the WordPress deployed path: /WordPress. For example:

```
http://stack-ID-FOR-ELB.us-east-1.elb.amazonaws.com/WordPress
```

Tear Down the Application Deployment

Once you are finished with the tutorial, you will want to tear down the deployment so you are not charged for the resources.

The following is a generic stack delete operation. You'll want to submit it twice, once for the HA 2-Tier stack and once for the S3 bucket stack. As a final follow-through, submit a service request that

all snapshots for the S3 bucket (include the S3 bucket stack ID in the service request) be deleted. They are automatically deleted after 10 days, but deleting them early saves a little bit of cost.

This walkthrough provides an example of using the AMS console to delete an S3 stack; this procedure applies to deleting any stack using the AMS console.

> **Note**
>
> If deleting an S3 bucket, it must be emptied of objects first.

REQUIRED DATA:

- `StackId`: The stack to use. You can find this by looking at the AMS Console **Stacks** page, available through a link in the left nav. Using the AMS SKMS API/CLI, run the For the AMS SKMS API reference, see the **Reports** tab in the AWS Artifact Console. operation (`list-stack-summaries` in the CLI).
- The change type ID for this walkthrough is `ct-0q0bic0ywqk6c`, the version is "1.0", to find out the latest version, run this command:

```
aws amscm list-change-type-version-summaries --filter
 Attribute=ChangeTypeId,Value=ct-0q0bic0ywqk6c
```

INLINE CREATE:

- Issue the create RFC command with execution parameters provided inline (escape quotes when providing execution parameters inline). E

```
aws amscm create-rfc --change-type-id "ct-0q0bic0ywqk6c" --change-type-version "1.0"
 --title "Delete My Stack" --execution-parameters "{\"StackId\":\"STACK_ID\"}"
```

- Submit the RFC using the RFC ID returned in the create RFC operation. Until submitted, the RFC remains in the `Editing` state and is not acted on.

```
aws amscm submit-rfc --rfc-id RFC_ID
```

- Monitor the RFC status and view execution output:

```
aws amscm get-rfc --rfc-id RFC_ID
```

TEMPLATE CREATE:

1. Output the RFC template to a file in your current folder; example names it DeleteStackRfc.json:

   ```
   aws amscm create-rfc --generate-cli-skeleton > DeleteStackRfc.json
   ```

2. Modify and save the DeleteStackRfc.json file. Since deleting a stack has only one execution parameter, the execution parameters can be in the DeleteStackRfc.json file itself (there is no need to create a separate JSON file with execution parameters).

   The internal quotation marks in the ExecutionParameters JSON extension must be escaped with a backslash (\). Example without start and end time:

   ```
   {
   "ChangeTypeVersion":    "1.0",
   "ChangeTypeId":         "ct-0q0bic0ywqk6c",
   "Title":                "Delete-My-Stack-RFC"
   "ExecutionParameters":  "{
           \"StackId\":\"STACK_ID\"}"
   }
   ```

3. Create the RFC:

   ```
   aws amscm create-rfc --cli-input-json file://DeleteStackRfc.json
   ```

   You receive the RfcId of the new RFC in the response. For example:

   ```
   {
   "RfcId": "daaa1867-ffc5-1473-192a-842f6b326102"
   }
   ```

   Save the ID for subsequent steps.

4. Submit the RFC:

```
aws amscm submit-rfc --rfc-id RFC_ID
```

If the RFC succeeds, you receive no confirmation at the command line.

5. To monitor the status of the request and to view Execution Output:

```
aws amscm get-rfc --rfc-id RFC_ID --query "Rfc.
{Status:Status.Name,Exec:ExecutionOutput}" --output table
```

CLI Tutorial: Deploying a Tier and Tie WordPress Website

This section describes how to deploy a high availability (HA) WordPress site into an AMS environment using the AMS CLI. This set of instructions includes an example of creating the necessary WordPress CodeDeploy-compatible package (e.g. zip) file.

> **Note**
>
> This deployment walkthrough is designed for use with an AMZN Linux environment. The essential variable parameters are notated as *replaceable*; however, you may want to modify other parameters to suit your situation.

Summary of tasks and required RFCs:

1. Create the infrastructure:
   a. Create an RDS Stack (CLI)
   b. Create a load balancer
   c. Create an Auto scaling group and tie it to the load balancer
   d. Create an S3 bucket for CodeDeploy applications
2. Create a WordPress application bundle (does not require an RFC)
3. Deploy the WordPress application bundle with CodeDeploy:
   a. Create a CodeDeploy application
   b. Create a CodeDeploy deployment group
   c. Upload your WordPress application bundle to the S3 bucket (does not require an RFC)
   d. Deploy the CodeDeploy application

4. Validate the deployment
5. Tear down the deployment

Follow all steps at the command line from your authenticated account.

Creating an RFC using the CLI

For detailed information on creating RFCs, see Creating RFCs; for an explanation of common RFC parameters, see RFC common parameters .

Create the Infrastructure

The following procedures describe creating an RDS database, a load balancer, and an Auto Scaling group in such a manner that you use the resource IDs to build the infrastructure.

Create an RDS Stack (CLI)

See RDS stack | Create.

Create an ELB Stack

Launch a public load balancer (ELB). See Load Balancer (ELB) Stack | Create.

Create an Auto Scaling Group Stack

Launch an Auto scaling group.

See Auto Scaling Group | Create.

Create an S3 Store

Launch an S3 bucket. The S3 bucket is where you upload the application bundle you created. See S3 Storage | Create.

Create a WordPress Application Bundle for CodeDeploy

This section provides an example of creating an application deployment bundle.

1. Download WordPress, extract the files and create a ./scripts directory.

   Linux command:

```
wget https://github.com/WordPress/WordPress/archive/master.zip
```

Windows: Paste `https://github.com/WordPress/WordPress/archive/master.zip` into a browser window and download the zip file.

Create a temporary directory in which to assemble the package.

Linux:

```
mkdir /tmp/WordPress
```

Windows: Create a "WordPress" directory, you will use the directory path later.

2. Extract the WordPress source to the "WordPress" directory and create a ./scripts directory.

   Linux:

   ```
   unzip master.zip -d /tmp/WordPress_Temp
   cp -paf /tmp/WordPress_Temp/WordPress-master/* /tmp/WordPress
   rm -rf /tmp/WordPress_Temp
   rm -f master
   cd /tmp/WordPress
   mkdir scripts
   ```

   Windows: Go to the "WordPress" directory that you created and create a "scripts" directory there.

   If you are in a Windows environment, be sure to set the break type for the script files to Unix (LF). In Notepad ++, this is an option at the bottom right of the window.

3. Create the CodeDeploy **appspec.yml** file, in the WordPress directory (if copying the example, check the indentation, each space counts). IMPORTANT: Ensure that the "source" path is correct for copying the WordPress files (in this case, in your WordPress directory) to the expected destination (/var/www/html/WordPress). In the example, the appspec.yml file is in the directory with the WordPress files, so only "/" is needed. Also, even if you used a RHEL AMI for your Auto Scaling group, leave the "os: linux" line as-is. Example appspec.yml file:

   ```
   version: 0.0
   os: linux
   files:
   ```

```
  - source: /
    destination: /var/www/html/WordPress
hooks:
  BeforeInstall:
    - location: scripts/install_dependencies.sh
      timeout: 300
      runas: root
  AfterInstall:
    - location: scripts/config_wordpress.sh
      timeout: 300
      runas: root
  ApplicationStart:
    - location: scripts/start_server.sh
      timeout: 300
      runas: root
  ApplicationStop:
    - location: scripts/stop_server.sh
      timeout: 300
      runas: root
```

4. Create bash file scripts in the WordPress ./scripts directory.

   First, create `config_wordpress.sh` with the following content (if you prefer, you can edit the wp-config.php file directly).

   Note

   Replace *DBName* with the value given in the HA Stack RFC (for example, `wordpress`).
   Replace *DB_MasterUsername* with the `MasterUsername` value given in the HA Stack RFC (for example, `admin`).
   Replace *DB_MasterUserPassword* with the `MasterUserPassword` value given in the HA Stack RFC (for example, `p4ssw0rd`).
   Replace *DB_ENDPOINT* with the endpoint DNS name in the execution outputs of the HA Stack RFC (for example, `srt1cz23n45sfg.clgvd67uvydk.us-east-1.rds.amazonaws.com`). You can find this with the GetRfc operation (CLI: get-rfc --rfc-id RFC_ID) or in the AMS Console RFC details page for the HA Stack RFC that you previously submitted.

```
#!/bin/bash
```

```
chmod -R 755 /var/www/html/WordPress
cp /var/www/html/WordPress/wp-config-sample.php /var/www/html/WordPress/wp-
config.php
cd /var/www/html/WordPress
sed -i "s/database_name_here/DBName/g" wp-config.php
sed -i "s/username_here/DB_MasterUsername/g" wp-config.php
sed -i "s/password_here/DB_MasterUserPassword/g" wp-config.php
sed -i "s/localhost/DB_ENDPOINT/g" wp-config.php
```

5. In the same directory create `install_dependencies.sh` with the following content:

```
#!/bin/bash
yum install -y php
yum install -y php-mysql
yum install -y mysql
service httpd restart
```

> **Note**
>
> HTTPS is installed as part of the user data at launch in order to allow health checks to work from the start.

6. In the same directory create `start_server.sh` with the following content:

   - For Amazon Linux instances, use this:

   ```
   #!/bin/bash
   service httpd start
   ```

   - For RHEL instances, use this (the extra commands are policies that allow SELINUX to accept WordPress):

   ```
   #!/bin/bash
   setsebool -P  httpd_can_network_connect_db 1
   setsebool -P  httpd_can_network_connect 1
   chcon -t httpd_sys_rw_content_t /var/www/html/WordPress/wp-content -R
   restorecon -Rv /var/www/html
   service httpd start
   ```

7. In the same directory create `stop_server.sh` with the following content:

```
#!/bin/bash
service httpd stop
```

8. Create the zip bundle.

   Linux:

   ```
   $ cd /tmp/WordPress
   $ zip -r wordpress.zip .
   ```

   Windows: Go to your "WordPress" directory and select all of the files and create a zip file, be sure to name it wordpress.zip.

Deploy the WordPress Application Bundle with CodeDeploy

The CodeDeploy is an AWS deployment service that automates application deployments to Amazon EC2 instances. This part of the process involves creating a CodeDeploy application, creating a CodeDeploy deployment group, and then deploying the application using CodeDeploy.

Create a CodeDeploy Application

The CodeDeploy application is simply a name or container used by AWS CodeDeploy to ensure that the correct revision, deployment configuration, and deployment group are referenced during a deployment. The deployment configuration, in this case, is the WordPress bundle that you previously created.

REQUIRED DATA:

- `VpcId`: The VPC that you are using, this should be the same as the previously used VPC.
- `CodeDeployApplicationName`: Must be unique in the account. Look at the CodeDeploy Console to check for existing application names.
- `ChangeTypeId` and `ChangeTypeVersion`: The change type ID for this walkthrough is `ct-0ah3gwb9seqk2`, to find out the latest version, run this command:

```
aws amscm list-change-type-version-summaries --filter
 Attribute=ChangeTypeId,Value=ct-0ah3gwb9seqk2
```

1. Output the execution parameters JSON schema for the CodeDeploy application CT to a file in your current folder; example names it CreateCDAppParams.json.

```
aws amscm get-change-type-version --change-type-id "ct-0ah3gwb9seqk2" --query
 "ChangeTypeVersion.ExecutionInputSchema" --output text > CreateCDAppParams.json
```

2. Modify and save the JSON file as follows; you can delete and replace the contents.

```
{
"Description":                      "Create WordPress CodeDeploy App",
"VpcId":                            "VPC_ID",
"StackTemplateId":                  "stm-sft6rv00000000000",
"Name":                             "WordPressCDApp",
"TimeoutInMinutes":                 60,
"Parameters":   {
    "CodeDeployApplicationName":    "WordPressCDApp"
    }
}
```

3. Output the JSON template for CreateRfc to a file in your current folder; example names it CreateCDAppRfc.json.

```
aws amscm create-rfc --generate-cli-skeleton > CreateCDAppRfc.json
```

4. Modify and save the JSON file as follows; you can delete and replace the contents. Note that `RequestedStartTime` and `RequestedEndTime` are now optional; excluding them causes the RFC to be executed as soon as it is approved (which usually happens automatically). Tosubmit a "scheduled" RFC, add those values.

```
{
"ChangeTypeVersion":    "1.0",
"ChangeTypeId":         "ct-0ah3gwb9seqk2",
"Title":                "CD-App-For-WP-Stack-RFC"
}
```

5. Create the RFC, specifying the CreateCDAppRfc file and the execution parameters file:

```
aws amscm create-rfc --cli-input-json file://CreateCDAppRfc.json --execution-
parameters file://CreateCDAppParams.json
```

   You receive the RFC ID of the new RFC in the response. Save the ID for subsequent steps.

6. Submit the RFC:

```
aws amscm submit-rfc --rfc-id RFC_ID
```

   If the RFC succeeds, you receive no output.

7. Submit the RFC:

```
aws amscm get-rfc --rfc-id RFC_ID
```

Create a CodeDeploy Deployment Group

Create the CodeDeploy deployment group.

A CodeDeploy deployment group defines a set of individual instances targeted for a deployment.

REQUIRED DATA:

- `VpcId`: The VPC that you are using, this should be the same as the previously used VPC.
- `CodeDeployApplicationName`: Use the value you previously created.
- `CodeDeployAutoScalingGroups`: Use the name of the Auto Scaling group that you created previously.
- `CodeDeployDeploymentGroupName`: A name for the deployment group. This name must be unique for each application associated with the deployment group.
- `CodeDeployServiceRoleArn`: Use the formula given in the example.
- `ChangeTypeId` and `ChangeTypeVersion`: The change type ID for this walkthrough is `ct-2gd0u847qd9d2`, to find out the latest version, run this command:

```
aws amscm list-change-type-version-summaries --filter
 Attribute=ChangeTypeId,Value=ct-2gd0u847qd9d2
```

1. Output the execution parameters JSON schema to a file in your current folder; example names it CreateCDDepGroupParams.json.

```
aws amscm get-change-type-version --change-type-id "ct-2gd0u847qd9d2"
 --query "ChangeTypeVersion.ExecutionInputSchema" --output text >
 CreateCDDepGroupParams.json
```

2. Modify and save the JSON file as follows; you can delete and replace the contents.

```
{
"Description":                      "CreateWPCDDeploymentGroup",
"VpcId":                            "VPC_ID",
"StackTemplateId":                  "stm-sp9lrk00000000000",
"Name":                             "WordPressCDAppGroup",
"TimeoutInMinutes":                 60,
"Parameters":   {
    "CodeDeployApplicationName":        "WordPressCDApp",
    "CodeDeployAutoScalingGroups":      ["ASG_NAME"],
    "CodeDeployDeploymentConfigName":   "CodeDeployDefault.HalfAtATime",
    "CodeDeployDeploymentGroupName":    "UNIQUE_CDDepGroupNAME",
    "CodeDeployServiceRoleArn":         "arn:aws:iam::ACCOUNT_ID:role/aws-
codedeploy-role"
    }
}
```

3. Output the JSON template for CreateRfc to a file in your current folder; example names it CreateCDDepGroupRfc.json.

```
aws amscm create-rfc --generate-cli-skeleton > CreateCDDepGroupRfc.json
```

4. Modify and save the JSON file as follows; you can delete and replace the contents. Note that `RequestedStartTime` and `RequestedEndTime` are now optional; excluding them causes the RFC to be executed as soon as it is approved (which usually happens automatically). To submit a "scheduled" RFC, add those values.

```
{
"ChangeTypeVersion":    "1.0",
"ChangeTypeId":         "ct-2gd0u847qd9d2",
"Title":                "CD-Dep-Group-For-WP-Stack-RFC"
}
```

5. Create the RFC, specifying the CreateCDDepGroupRfc file and the execution parameters file:

```
aws amscm create-rfc --cli-input-json file://CreateCDDepGroupRfc.json --execution-
parameters file://CreateCDDepGroupParams.json
```

   You receive the RFC ID of the new RFC in the response. Save the ID for subsequent steps.

6. Submit the RFC:

```
aws amscm submit-rfc --rfc-id RFC_ID
```

If the RFC succeeds, you receive no output.

7. Check the RFC status:

```
aws amscm get-rfc --rfc-id RFC_ID
```

Upload the WordPress Application

You automatically have access to any S3 bucket instance that you create. You can access it through your Bastions (see Accessing Instances), or through the S3 console, and upload the CodeDeploy bundle. The bundle needs to be in place in order to continue deploying the stack. The example uses the bucket name previously created.

```
aws s3 cp wordpress/wordpress.zip s3://ACCOUNT_ID-codedeploy-bundles/
```

Deploy the WordPress Application with CodeDeploy

Deploy the CodeDeploy application.

Once you have your CodeDeploy application bundle and deployment group, use this RFC to deploy the application.

REQUIRED DATA:

- `VPC-ID`: The VPC you are using, this should be the same as the previously used VPC.
- `CodeDeployApplicationName`: Use the name for the CodeDeploy application that you previously created.
- `CodeDeployDeploymentGroupName`: Use the name of the CodeDeploy deployment group that you created previously.
- `S3Location` (where you uploaded the application bundle): `S3Bucket`: The BucketName that you previously created, `S3BundleType` and `S3Key`: The type of, and name of, the bundle that you put on your S3 store.
- `ChangeTypeId` and `ChangeTypeVersion`: The change type ID for this walkthrough is `ct-2edc3sd1sqmrb`, to find out the latest version, run this command:

```
aws amscm list-change-type-version-summaries --filter
 Attribute=ChangeTypeId,Value=ct-2edc3sd1sqmrb
```

1. Output the execution parameters JSON schema for the CodeDeploy application deployment CT to a file in your current folder; example names it DeployCDAppParams.json.

```
aws amscm get-change-type-version --change-type-id "ct-2edc3sd1sqmrb" --query
 "ChangeTypeVersion.ExecutionInputSchema" --output text > DeployCDAppParams.json
```

2. Modify the JSON file as follows; you can delete and replace the contents. For S3Bucket, use the BucketName that you previously created.

```
{
"Description":                        "Deploy WordPress CodeDeploy Application",
"VpcId":                              "VPC_ID",
"Name":                               "WP CodeDeploy Deployment Group",
"TimeoutInMinutes":                   60,
"Parameters":   {
    "CodeDeployApplicationName":         "WordPressCDApp",
    "CodeDeployDeploymentGroupName":     "WordPressCDDepGroup",
    "CodeDeployIgnoreApplicationStopFailures": false,
    "CodeDeployRevision": {
      "RevisionType": "S3",
      "S3Location": {
        "S3Bucket": "ACCOUNT_ID.BUCKET_NAME",
        "S3BundleType": "zip",
        "S3Key": "wordpress.zip" }
        }
    }
}
```

3. Output the JSON template for CreateRfc to a file in your current folder; example names it DeployCDAppRfc.json:

```
aws amscm create-rfc --generate-cli-skeleton > DeployCDAppRfc.json
```

4. Modify and save the DeployCDAppRfc.json file; you can delete and replace the contents.

```
{
"ChangeTypeVersion":    "1.0",
```

```
"ChangeTypeId":          "ct-2edc3sd1sqmrb",
"Title":                 "CD-Deploy-For-WP-Stack-RFC",
"RequestedStartTime":    "2017-04-28T22:45:00Z",
"RequestedEndTime":      "2017-04-28T22:45:00Z"
}
```

5. Create the RFC, specifying the execution parameters file and the DeployCDAppRfc file:

```
aws amscm create-rfc --cli-input-json file://DeployCDAppRfc.json  --execution-
parameters file://DeployCDAppParams.json
```

   You receive the RfcId of the new RFC in the response. Save the ID for subsequent steps.

6. Submit the RFC:

```
aws amscm submit-rfc --rfc-id RFC_ID
```

   If the RFC succeeds, you receive no output.

Validate the Application Deployment

Navigate to the endpoint (ELB CName) of the previously created load balancer, with the WordPress deployed path: /WordPress. For example:

```
http://stack-ID-FOR-ELB.us-east-1.elb.amazonaws.com/WordPress
```

Tear Down the Application Deployment

To tear down the deployment, you submit the Delete Stack CT against the RDS database stack, the application load balancer, the Auto Scaling group, the S3 bucket, and the Code Deploy application and group--six RFCs in all. Additionally, you can submit a service request for the RDS snapshots to be deleted (they are deleted automatically after ten days, but they do cost a small amount while there). Gather the stack IDs for all and then follow these steps.

This walkthrough provides an example of using the AMS console to delete an S3 stack; this procedure applies to deleting any stack using the AMS console.

> **Note**
>
> If deleting an S3 bucket, it must be emptied of objects first.

REQUIRED DATA:

- `StackId`: The stack to use. You can find this by looking at the AMS Console **Stacks** page, available through a link in the left nav. Using the AMS SKMS API/CLI, run the For the AMS SKMS API reference, see the **Reports** tab in the AWS Artifact Console. operation (`list-stack-summaries` in the CLI).
- The change type ID for this walkthrough is `ct-0q0bic0ywqk6c`, the version is "1.0", to find out the latest version, run this command:

```
aws amscm list-change-type-version-summaries --filter
 Attribute=ChangeTypeId,Value=ct-0q0bic0ywqk6c
```

INLINE CREATE:

- Issue the create RFC command with execution parameters provided inline (escape quotes when providing execution parameters inline). E

```
aws amscm create-rfc --change-type-id "ct-0q0bic0ywqk6c" --change-type-version "1.0"
 --title "Delete My Stack" --execution-parameters "{\"StackId\":\"STACK_ID\"}"
```

- Submit the RFC using the RFC ID returned in the create RFC operation. Until submitted, the RFC remains in the `Editing` state and is not acted on.

```
aws amscm submit-rfc --rfc-id RFC_ID
```

- Monitor the RFC status and view execution output:

```
aws amscm get-rfc --rfc-id RFC_ID
```

TEMPLATE CREATE:

1. Output the RFC template to a file in your current folder; example names it DeleteStackRfc.json:

```
aws amscm create-rfc --generate-cli-skeleton > DeleteStackRfc.json
```

2. Modify and save the DeleteStackRfc.json file. Since deleting a stack has only one execution parameter, the execution parameters can be in the DeleteStackRfc.json file itself (there is no need to create a separate JSON file with execution parameters).

   The internal quotation marks in the ExecutionParameters JSON extension must be escaped with a backslash (\). Example without start and end time:

```
{
"ChangeTypeVersion":    "1.0",
"ChangeTypeId":         "ct-0q0bic0ywqk6c",
"Title":                "Delete-My-Stack-RFC"
"ExecutionParameters":  "{
        \"StackId\":\"STACK_ID\"}"
}
```

3. Create the RFC:

```
aws amscm create-rfc --cli-input-json file://DeleteStackRfc.json
```

   You receive the RfcId of the new RFC in the response. For example:

```
{
"RfcId": "daaa1867-ffc5-1473-192a-842f6b326102"
}
```

   Save the ID for subsequent steps.

4. Submit the RFC:

```
aws amscm submit-rfc --rfc-id RFC_ID
```

   If the RFC succeeds, you receive no confirmation at the command line.

5. To monitor the status of the request and to view Execution Output:

```
aws amscm get-rfc --rfc-id RFC_ID --query "Rfc.
{Status:Status.Name,Exec:ExecutionOutput}" --output table
```

Application maintenance

Once infrastructure is deployed, updating it in a consistent way across all your AMS environments, from QA to staging to production, is the challenge.

This section provides an overview of the AMS workload ingestion process and some examples of different methods you can use to keep your cloud infrastructure layer up to date.

Application maintenance strategies

How you deploy your applications impacts how you maintain them. This section provides some strategies for application maintenance.

Environment updates can involve any of these changes:

- Security updates
- New versions of your applications
- Application configuration changes
- Updates to dependencies

> **Note**
>
> For any application deployment, no matter the method, always file a service request beforehand to let AMS know that you are going to deploy an application.

Immutable vs Mutable Application Installation Examples

Compute Instance Mutability	App Install Method	AMI
Mutable	With CodeDeploy	AMS-provided
	Manually	
	With a Chef or Puppet, Pull-Based	
	With Ansible or Salt, Push-Based	

Compute Instance Mutability	App Install Method	AMI
Immutable	With a Golden AMI	Custom (based on AMS-provided)

Mutable deployment with a CodeDeploy-enabled AMI

AWS CodeDeploy is a service that automates code deployments to any instance, including Amazon EC2 instances and instances running on-premises. You can use CodeDeploy with AMS to create and deploy a CodeDeploy application. Note that AMS provides a default instance profile for CodeDeploy applications.

- Amazon Linux (version 1)
- Amazon Linux 2
- RedHat 7
- CentOS 7

Before you use CodeDeploy for the first time, you must complete a number of setup steps:

1. Install or upgrade the AWS CLI
2. Create a Service Role for AWS CodeDeploy, you use the Service Role ARN in the deployment

IDs for all CT options can be found in the Change Type Reference.

> **Note**
>
> Currently, you must use Amazon S3 storage with this solution.

The basic steps are outlined here and the procedure is detailed in the AMS User Guide.

1. Create an Amazon S3 storage bucket. CT: ct-1a68ck03fn98r. The S3 bucket must have versioning enabled (for information on doing this, see Enabling Bucket Versioning).

2. Put your bundled CodeDeploy artifacts on it. You can do this with the Amazon S3 console without requesting access through AMS. Or using a variation of this command:

```
aws s3 cp ZIP_FILEPATH_AND_NAME s3://S3BUCKET_NAME/
```

3. Find an AMS `customer-` AMI; use either:

   - AMS Console: The VPC details page for the relevant VPC
   - AMS API For the AMS SKMS API reference, see the **Reports** tab in the AWS Artifact Console. or CLI: `aws amsskms list-amis`

4. Create an Autoscaling group (ASG). CT: ct-2tylseo8rxfsc. Specify the AMS AMI, set the load balancer to have open ports, specify `customer-mc-ec2-instance-profile` for the `ASGIAMInstanceProfile`.
5. Create your CodeDeploy application. CT: ct-0ah3gwb9seqk2. Parameters include an application name; for example `WordpressProd`.
6. Create your CodeDeploy deployment group. CT: ct-2gd0u847qd9d2. Parameters include your CodeDeploy application name, ASG name, the configuration type name, and the service role ARN.
7. Deploy the CodeDeploy application. CT: ct-2edc3sd1sqmrb. Parameters include your CodeDeploy application name, configuration type name, deployment group name, revision type, and the S3 bucket location where the CodeDeploy artifacts are.

Mutable deployment, manually configured and updated application instances

This application deployment strategy is a simple and manual update of application instances. These are the basic steps.

IDs for all CT options can be found in the Change Type Reference.

> **Note**
>
> Currently, you must use Amazon S3 storage with this solution.

The basic steps are outlined here; the various procedures are detailed in the AMS User Guide.

1. Create an Amazon S3 storage bucket. CT: ct-1a68ck03fn98r. The S3 bucket must have versioning enabled (for information on doing this, see Enabling Bucket Versioning).
2. Put your bundled application artifacts on it (everything your application needs to start on boot and work). You can do this with the Amazon S3 console without requesting access through AMS. Or using a variation of this command:

   ```
   aws s3 cp ZIP_FILEPATH_AND_NAME s3://S3BUCKET_NAME/
   ```

3. Find an AMS AMI, all will have CodeDeploy on them. To find a "customer-" AMI use either:
   - AMS Console: The VPC details page for the relevant VPC
   - AMS API For the AMS SKMS API reference, see the **Reports** tab in the AWS Artifact Console. or CLI: `aws amsskms list-amis`
4. Create an EC2 instance with that AMI. CT: ct-14027q0sjyt1h. Specify the AMS AMI, set a tag `Key=backup, Value=true` and specify the `customer-mc-ec2-instance-profile` for the `InstanceProfile` parameter. Note the instance ID that is returned.
5. Request admin access to the instance. CT: ct-1dmlg9g1l91h6. You'll need the FQDN for your account. If you're unsure what your FQDN is, you can find it by:
   - Using the AWS Management Console for Directory Services (under Security and Identity) Directory Name tab.
   - Running one of these commands (return directory classes; DC+DC+DC=FQDN): Windows: `whoami /fqdn` or Linux: `hostname --fqdn`.
6. Log into the instance, see Accessing Instances via Bastions in the AMS User Guide.
7. Download your bundled application files from your S3 bucket to the instance.
8. Request an immediate backup with a service request to AMS, you will need to know the instance ID.
9. When you need to update your application, load new files to your S3 bucket and then follow steps 3 through 8.

Mutable deployment with a pull-based deployment tool-configured AMI

This strategy relies on the `InstanceUserData` parameter in the Managed Services Create EC2 CT. For more information on using this parameter, see Configuring Instances with User Data. This example assumes a pull-based application deployment tool like Chef or Puppet.

The CodeDeploy agent is supported on all AMS AMIs. Here is the list of supported AMIs:

- Amazon Linux (version 1)
- Amazon Linux 2
- RedHat 7
- CentOS 7

IDs for all CT options can be found in the Change Types Reference.

> **Note**
>
> Currently, you must use Amazon S3 storage with this solution.

The basic steps are outlined here and the procedure is detailed in the AMS User Guide.

1. Create an Amazon S3 storage bucket. CT: ct-1a68ck03fn98r. The S3 bucket must have versioning enabled (for information on doing this, see Enabling Bucket Versioning).
2. Put your bundled CodeDeploy artifacts on it. You can do this with the Amazon S3 console without requesting access through AMS. Or using a variation of this command:

   ```
   aws s3 cp ZIP_FILEPATH_AND_NAME s3://S3BUCKET_NAME/
   ```

3. Find an AMS `customer-` AMI; use either:

   - AMS Console: The VPC details page for the relevant VPC
   - AMS API For the AMS SKMS API reference, see the **Reports** tab in the AWS Artifact Console. or CLI: `aws amsskms list-amis`

4. Create an EC2 instance. CT: ct-14027q0sjyt1h; set a tag `Key=backup, Value=true`, and use the `InstanceUserData` parameter to specify a bootstrap and other scripts (download Chef/

Puppet agent, etc.), and include the necessary authorization keys. You can find an example of doing this in the AMS User Guide, Change Mangement section examples of creating an HA Two Tier Deployment. Alternatively, request access to, and log into, the instance and configure it with the necessary deployment artifacts. Remember that pull-based deployment commands go from the agents on your instances to your corporate master server and may need authorization to go through bastions. You may need a service request to AMS to request security group/AD group access without bastions.

5. Repeat step 4 to create another EC2 instance and configure it with the deployment tool master server.
6. When you need to update your application, use the deployment tool to rollout the updates to your instances.

Mutable deployment with a push-based deployment tool-configured AMI

This strategy relies on the `InstanceUserData` parameter in the Managed Services Create EC2 CT. For more information on using this parameter, see Configuring Instances with User Data. This example assumes a pull-based application deployment tool like Chef or Puppet.

IDs for all CT options can be found in the Change Type Reference.

> **Note**
>
> Currently, you must use Amazon S3 storage with this solution.

The basic steps are outlined here and the procedure is detailed in the AMS User Guide.

1. Create an Amazon S3 storage bucket. CT: ct-1a68ck03fn98r. The S3 bucket must have versioning enabled (for information on doing this, see Enabling Bucket Versioning).
2. Put your bundled CodeDeploy artifacts on it. You can do this with the Amazon S3 console without requesting access through AMS. Or using a variation of this command:

   ```
   aws s3 cp ZIP_FILEPATH_AND_NAME s3://S3BUCKET_NAME/
   ```

3. Find an AMS AMI, all will have CodeDeploy on them. To find a "customer-" AMI use either:

- AMS Console: The VPC details page for the relevant VPC
- AMS API For the AMS SKMS API reference, see the **Reports** tab in the AWS Artifact Console. or CLI: `aws amsskms list-amis`

4. Create an EC2 instance. CT: ct-14027q0sjyt1h; set a tag `Key=backup, Value=true`, and use the `InstanceUserData` parameter to run a bootstrap and other scripts including authorization keys, SALT stack (bootstrap a minion—for more information see Bootstrapping Salt on Linux EC2 with Cloud-Init) or Ansible (install a key pair—for more information see Getting Started with Ansible and Dynamic Amazon EC2 Inventory Management). Alternately, request access to, and log in to, the instance and configure it with the necessary deployment artifacts. Remember that push-based commands come from your corporate subnet to your instances and you may need to configure authorization for them to go thru bastions. You may need a service request to AMS to request security group/AD group access without bastions.
5. Repeat step 4 to create another EC2 instance and configure it with the deployment tool master server.
6. When you need to update your application, use the deployment tool to rollout the updates to your instances.

Immutable deployment with a golden AMI

This strategy employs a "golden" AMI that you have configured to behave as you want all of your application instances to. For example, the instances created with this golden AMI would self-join the correct domain and DNS, self-configure, reboot and launch all necessary systems. When you want to update your application instances, you re-create the golden AMI and rollout all-new application instances with it.

The CodeDeploy agent is supported on all AMS AMIs. Here is the list of supported AMIs:

- Amazon Linux (version 1)
- Amazon Linux 2
- RedHat 7
- CentOS 7

IDs for all CT options can be found in the Change Type Reference.

> **Note**
>
> Currently, you must use Amazon S3 storage with this solution.

1. Create an Amazon S3 storage bucket. CT: ct-1a68ck03fn98r. The S3 bucket must have versioning enabled (for information on doing this, see Enabling Bucket Versioning).
2. Put your bundled application artifacts on it (everything your application needs to start on boot and work). You can do this with the Amazon S3 console without requesting access through AMS. Or using a variation of this command:

   ```
   aws s3 cp ZIP_FILEPATH_AND_NAME s3://S3BUCKET_NAME/
   ```

3. Find an AMS `customer-` AMI; use either:

   - AMS Console: The VPC details page for the relevant VPC
   - AMS API For the AMS SKMS API reference, see the **Reports** tab in the AWS Artifact Console. or CLI: `aws amsskms list-amis`

4. Create an EC2 instance with that AMI. CT: ct-14027q0sjyt1h. Specify the AMS AMI, set a tag `Key=backup, Value=true` and specify `customer-mc-ec2-instance-profile` for the `InstanceProfile`. Note the instance ID that is returned.
5. Request admin access to the instance. CT: ct-1dmlg9g1l91h6. You'll need the FQDN for your account. If you're unsure what your FQDN is, you can find it by:

   - Using the AWS Management Console for Directory Services (under Security and Identity) Directory Name tab.
   - Running one of these commands (return directory classes; DC+DC+DC=FQDN): Windows: `whoami /fqdn` or Linux: `hostname --fqdn`.

6. Log into the instance, see Accessing Instances in the AMS User Guide.
7. Download to the instance your bundled application files from your S3 bucket. Configure the instance so that it self-deploys the fully-functioning application on boot.
8. Create the golden AMI on the instance. CT: ct-3rqqu43krekby. For details, see AMI | Create.
9. Configure an Auto Scaling group to create new instances using that AMI. CT: ct-2tylseo8rxfsc. When you need to update your application, follow this procedure and request AMS to update the ASG to use the new golden AMI; use a Management | Other | Other | Update CT for this.

Update Strategies

There are a few different strategies you can employ to update your applications or instances in your AMS-managed environment.

- Scheduled Downtime: This simple strategy involves scheduling time for your application to be offline and manually updated. To do this, submit a Management | Other | Other | Update CT (ct-0xdawir96cy7k) request to stop the required instances. Make the necessary updates, and then submit another Management | Other | Other | Update CT (ct-0xdawir96cy7k) request to start the instances.

- Blue/Green: This strategy requires that you have a redundant environment (two completely functional environments) and take one environment offline using domain name system (DNS) or web firewall (WAF) updates to redirect traffic. Update one environment and then redirect again to update the other environment.

  To learn more, see AWS CodeDeploy Introduces Blue/Green Deployments.

- Rolling Update with new AMI: This is where you have a new AMI that you customize (see Create AMI) and then request that AMS deploy it to your Auto Scaling group. Use a Management | Other | Other | Update CT (ct-0xdawir96cy7k) to do this.

AWS Managed Services Resource Scheduler

Use AWS Managed Services (AMS) Resource Scheduler to schedule the automatic start and stop of AutoScaling groups, Amazon EC2 instances, and RDS instances in your account. This helps reduce infrastructure costs where the resources are not meant to be running 24/7. The solution is built on top of Instance Scheduler on AWS, but contains additional features and customizations specific to AMS needs.

> **Note**
>
> By default, AMS Resource Scheduler doesn't interact with resources that aren't part of an AWS CloudFormation stack. The resource must be part of a stack that starts with "stack-" , "sc-" or "SC-". To schedule the resources that are not part of a CloudFormation stack, you can update the Resource Scheduler stack parameter `ScheduleNonStackResources` to `Yes`.

AMS Resource Scheduler uses periods and schedules:

- *Periods* define the times when Resource Scheduler runs, such as start time, end time, and days of the month.
- *Schedules* contain your defined periods, along with additional configurations, such as SSM maintenance window, timezone, hibernate setting, and so forth; and specify when resources should run, given the configured period rules.

You can configure these periods and schedules using AMS Resource Scheduler's automated change types (CTs).

For full details on the settings available for AMS Resource Scheduler, see the corresponding AWS Instance Scheduler documentation at Solution components. For an architectural view of the solution, see the corresponding AWS Instance Scheduler documentation at Architecture overview.html.

Deploying AMS Resource Scheduler

To deploy AMS Resource Scheduler, use the automated change type (CT) : Deployment | AMS Resource Scheduler | Solution | Deploy (ct-0ywnhc8e5k9z5) to raise an RFC that then deploys the solution in your account. Once the RFC is executed, a CloudFormation stack containing AMS Resource Scheduler resources with default configuration, is automatically provisioned into your account. For more on Resource Scheduler change types, see AMS Resource Scheduler.

> **Note**
>
> To find out if AMS Resource Scheduler is already deployed in your account, check the AWS Lambda console for that account and look for the **AMSResourceScheduler** function.

After the AMS Resource Scheduler is provisioned in your account, we recommend you review the default configuration and, if required, customize configurations such as tag key, timezone, scheduled services, and so forth, based on your preferences. For details on the recommended customizations, see Customizing AMS Resource Scheduler, next.

To make the custom configurations, or just confirm the Resource Scheduler configuration,

Customizing AMS Resource Scheduler

We recommend you customize the following properties of AMS Resource Scheduler using the update AMS Resource Scheduler change types, see AMS Resource Scheduler.

- **Tag name**: The name of the tag that Resource Scheduler will use to associate instance schedules with resources. The default value is Schedule.
- **Scheduled Services**: A comma-separated list of services that Resource Scheduler can manage. The default value is "ec2,rds,autoscaling". Valid values are "ec2", "rds" and "autoscaling"
- **Default timezone**: Specify the default time zone for the Resource Scheduler to use. The default value is UTC.
- **Use CMK**: A comma-separated list of Amazon KMS Customer Managed Key (CMK) ARNs that Resource Scheduler can be granted permissions to.
- **Use LicenseManager**: A comma-separated list of AWS Licence Manager ARNs to that Resource Scheduler can be granted permissions to.

> **Note**
>
> AMS may, time to time, release features and fixes to keep AMS Resource Scheduler up to date in your account. When this happens, any customization that you make to the AMS Resource Scheduler are preserved.

Using AMS Resource Scheduler

To configure AMS Resource Scheduler after the solution is deployed, use the automated Resource Scheduler CTs to create, delete, update, and describe (get details on) AMS Resource Scheduler periods (the times when Resource Scheduler runs) and schedules (the configured periods and other options). For an example of using the AMS Resource Scheduler change types, see AMS Resource Scheduler.

To select resources to be managed by AMS Resource Scheduler, following deployment and schedule creation, you use the AMS Tag Create CTs to tag Auto Scaling groups, Amazon RDS stacks, and Amazon EC2 resources with that tag key you provided during deployment, and the defined schedule as the tag value. After the resources are tagged, the resources are scheduled for start or stop per your defined Resource Scheduler schedule.

There is no additional cost to using AMS Resource Scheduler. However the solution makes use of several AWS services and you're charged for these resources as they are used. For more details, see Architecture overview.

To opt out of AMS Resource Scheduler:

- For temporary opt-out or disabling: Submit an RFC using the automated Management | AMS Resource Scheduler | State | Disable change type (ct-14v49adibs4db)
- For permanent removal: Submit a Management | Other | Other | Update (review required) (ct-0xdawir96cy7k) RFC requesting removal from the Resource Scheduler release automation system

AMS Resource Scheduler cost estimator

In order to track cost savings, AMS Resource Scheduler features a component that hourly calculates the estimated cost savings for Amazon EC2 and RDS resources that are managed by scheduler. This cost savings data is then published as a CloudWatch metric (`AMS/ResourceScheduler`) to help you track it. The cost savings estimator only estimates savings on instance running hours. It does not account any other cost, such as data transfer costs associated with a resource.

The cost savings estimator is enabled with Resource Scheduler. It runs hourly and retrieves cost and usage data from AWS Cost Explorer. From that data it calculates the average cost per hour for each instance type and then projects the cost for a full day if it was running without being scheduled. The cost savings is the difference between the projected cost and the actual reported cost from Cost Explorer for a given day.

For example, if instance A is configured with Resource Scheduler to run from 9 a.m. to 5 p.m., that is eight hours on a given day. Cost Explorer reports the cost as $1 and usage as 8. The average cost per hour is therefore $0.125. If the instance was not scheduled with Resource Scheduler, then the instance would run 24 hours on that day. In that case, the cost would have been 24x0.125 = $3. Resource Scheduler helped you achieve a cost savings of $2.

In order for the cost savings estimator to retrieve cost and usage only for resources managed by Resource Scheduler from Cost Explorer, the tag key that Resource Scheduler uses to target resources needs to be activated as the **Cost allocation** tag in the Billing Dashboard. If the account belongs to an organization, the tag key needs to be activated in the Management account of the organization. For information on doing this, see Activating User-Defined Cost Allocation Tags and User-Defined Cost Allocation Tags

After the tag key is activated as Cost Allocation Tag, AWS billing starts tracking cost and usage for resources managed by Resource Scheduler, and after that data is available, the cost savings estimator starts to calculate the cost savings and publish the data under the `AMS/ResourceScheduler` metric namespace in CloudWatch.

Cost estimator tips

Cost Savings Estimator does not accept discounts such as reserved instances, savings plans, and so forth, into consideration in its calculation. The Estimator takes usage costs from Cost Explorer and calculates the average cost per hour for the resources. For more details, see Understanding your AWS Cost Datasets: A Cheat Sheet

In order for the cost savings estimator to retrieve cost and usage only for resources managed by Resource Scheduler from Cost Explorer, the tag key that Resource Scheduler uses to target resources needs to be activated as the **Cost Allocation** tag in the Billing Dashboard. If the account belongs to an organization, the tag key needs to be activated in the management account of the organization. For information on doing this, see User-Defined Cost Allocation Tags. If the cost allocation tag is not activated, the estimator is not able to calculate the savings and publish the metric, even if it is enabled.

AMS Resource Scheduler best practices

Scheduling Amazon EC2 Instances

- Instance shut down behavior must be set to `stop` and not to `terminate`. This is pre-set to `stop` for instances that are created with the AMS Amazon EC2 Create automated change type (ct-14027q0sjyt1h) and can be set for Amazon EC2 instances created with AWS CloudFormation ingestion, by setting the `InstanceInitiatedShutdownBehavior` property to `stop`. If instances have shut down behavior set to `terminate`, then the instances will end when the Resource Scheduler stops them and the scheduler won't be able to start them back up.
- Amazon EC2 instances that are part of an Auto Scaling group aren't processed individually by AMS Resource Scheduler, even if they are tagged.
- If the target instance root volume is encrypted with a KMS customer master key (CMK), an additional `kms:CreateGrant` permission needs to be added to your Resource Scheduler IAM role, for the scheduler to be able to start such instances. This permission is not added to the role by default for improved security. If you require this permission, submit an RFC with the Management | AMS Resource Scheduler | Solution | Update change type, and specify a comma separated list of ARNs of the KMS CMKs.

Scheduling Auto Scaling groups

- AMS Resource Scheduler starts or stops the auto scaling of Auto Scaling groups, not individual instances in the group. That is, the scheduler restores the size of the Auto Scaling group (start) or sets the size to 0 (stop).
- Tag AutoScaling group with the specified tag and not the instances within the group.
- During stop, AMS Resource Scheduler stores the Auto Scaling group's Minimum, Desired, and Maximum capacity values and sets the Minimum and Desired Capacity to 0. During start, the scheduler restores the Auto Scaling group size as it was during the stop. Therefore, Auto Scaling group instances must use an appropriate capacity configuration so that the instances' termination and relaunch don't affect any application running in the Auto Scaling group.
- If the Auto Scaling group is modified (the minimum or maximum capacity) during a running period, the scheduler stores the new Auto Scaling group size and uses it when restoring the group at the end of a stop schedule.

Scheduling Amazon RDS instances

- The scheduler can take a snapshot before stopping the RDS instances (does not apply to Aurora DB cluster). This feature is turned on by default with the **Create RDS Instance Snapshot** CloudFormation template parameter set to **true**. The snapshot is kept until the next time the Amazon RDS instance is stopped and a new snapshot is created.

  Scheduler can start/stop Amazon RDS instance that are part of a cluster or Amazon RDS Aurora database or in a multi availability zone (Multi-AZ) configuration. However, check Amazon RDS limitation when the scheduler won't be able to stop the Amazon RDS instance, especially Multi-AZ instances. To schedule Aurora Cluster for start or stop use the **Schedule Aurora Clusters** template parameter (default is **true**). The Aurora cluster (not the individual instances within the cluster) must be tagged with the tag key defined during initial configuration and the schedule name as the tag value to schedule that cluster.

  Every Amazon RDS instance has a weekly maintenance window during which any system changes are applied. During the maintenance window, Amazon RDS will automatically start instances that have been stopped for more than seven days to apply maintenance. Note that Amazon RDS will not stop the instance once the maintenance event is complete.

  The scheduler allows specifying whether to add the preferred maintenance window of an Amazon RDS instance as a running period to its schedule. The solution will start the instance at

the beginning of the maintenance window and stop the instance at the end of the maintenance window if no other running period specifies that the instance should run, and if the maintenance event is completed.

If the maintenance event is not completed by the end of the maintenance window, the instance will run until the scheduling interval after the maintenance event is completed.

Note

The Scheduler doesn't validate that a resource is started or stopped. It makes the API call and moves on. If the API call fails, it logs the error for investigation.

Application security considerations

Application security includes considering what permissions the application will need to run, what firewall rules, what IAM roles should be enabled for access to the application.

To better understand general AWS security, see Best Practices for Security, Identity, & Compliance.

Access for configuration management

AWS Managed Services (AMS) seeks to provide you with a headache-free infrastructure so you don't have to worry about security issues, patching issues, backup issues, etc. To do that, AMS recommends minimal IAM roles allowing only a specific group or a master server, if using an application deployment tool, access to the instances running your application.

Application access firewall rules

Just like the operating system (OS), all application access should be governed using Active Directory (AD) groups. Using Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS) as an example, you must break the mirror (replication) to add a new user. The best approach is to create a group in AD and add it at database creation time. Having the groups in your AMS AD means that you can create CTs for application access. For information on the official grouping strategy for AD, see Using Group Nesting Strategy – AD Best Practices for Group Strategy.

To learn more about domain trees and parent/child domains, see How Domains and Forests Work.

The following rules illustrate a solution appropriate for a multi-domain forest trust with users located in child domains.

Windows Instances

These are the rules to configure for your Windows parent and child domain controllers.

Parent Domain Controller, Windows

FROM: Parent domain controllers TO: Windows stack and shared services subnets

Source Port	Destination Port	Protocol
88	49152 - 65535	TCP

Source Port	Destination Port	Protocol
389	49152 - 65535	UDP

FROM: Stack subnets, including shared services TO: Windows forest root domain controllers

Source Port	Destination Port	Protocol
49152 - 65535	88	TCP
49152 - 65535	389	UDP

Child Domain Controller, Windows

FROM: Child domain controllers TO: Windows AWS domain controllers

Source Port	Destination Port	Protocol
49152 - 65535	53	TCP
49152 - 65535	88	TCP
49152 - 65535	389	UDP

FROM: Child domain controllers TO: Windows stack and shared services subnets

Source Port	Destination Port	Protocol
88	49152 - 65535	TCP
135	49152 - 65535	TCP
389	49152 - 65535	TCP
389	49152 - 65535	UDP
445	49152 - 65535	TCP

Source Port	Destination Port	Protocol
49152 - 65535	49152 - 65535	TCP

FROM: Stack subnets, including shared services TO: Windows child domain controllers

Source Port	Destination Port	Protocol
49152 - 65535	88	TCP
49152 - 65535	135	TCP
49152 - 65535	389	TCP
49152 - 65535	389	UDP
49152 - 65535	445	TCP
49152 - 65535	49152 - 65535	TCP

Linux Instances

These are the rules to configure for your Linux parent and child domain controllers.

All testing was performed using Amazon Linux. While the dynamic port range for Windows is 49152 to 65535, many Linux kernels use the port range 32768 to 61000. Run the below command to view the IP port range.

```
cat /proc/sys/net/ipv4/ip_local_port_range
```

Parent Domain Controller, Linux

FROM: Parent domain controllers TO: Linux stack and shared services subnets

Source Port	Destination Port	Protocol
389	32768 - 61000	UDP
88	32768 - 61000	TCP

FROM: Stack subnets, including shared services TO: Linux forest root domain controllers

Source Port	Destination Port	Protocol
32768 - 61000	88	TCP
32768 - 61000	389	UDP

Child Domain Controller, Linux

FROM: Child domain controllers TO: Linux AWS domain controllers

Source Port	Destination Port	Protocol
49152 - 65535	53	TCP
49152 - 65535	88	TCP
389	49152 - 65535	UDP
49152 - 65535	389	UDP

FROM: Child domain controllers TO: Linux stack and shared services subnets

Source Port	Destination Port	Protocol
88	32768 - 61000	TCP
389	32768 - 61000	UDP

FROM: Stack subnets, including shared services TO: Linux child domain controller

Source Port	Destination Port	Protocol
32768 - 61000	88	TCP
32768 - 61000	389	UDP

AMS egress traffic management

By default, the route with a destination CIDR of 0.0.0.0/0 for AMS private and customer-applications subnets has a network address translation (NAT) gateway as the target. AMS services, TrendMicro and patching, are components that must have egress access to the Internet so that AMS is able to provide its service, and TrendMicro and operating systems can obtain updates.

AMS supports diverting the egress traffic to the internet through a customer-managed egress device as long as:

- It acts as an implicit (for example, transparent) proxy.

  and

- It allows AMS HTTP and HTTPS dependencies (listed in this section) in order to allow ongoing patching and maintenance of AMS managed infrastructure.

Some examples are:

- The transit gateway (TGW) has a default route pointing to the customer-managed, on-premises firewall over the AWS Direct Connect connection in the Multi-Account Landing Zone Networking account.
- The TGW has a default route pointing to an AWS endpoint in the Multi-Account Landing Zone egress VPC leveraging AWS PrivateLink, pointing to a customer-managed proxy in another AWS account.
- The TGW has a default route pointing to a customer-managed firewall in another AWS account, with site-to-site VPN connection as an attachment to the Multi-Account Landing Zone TGW.

AMS has identified the corresponding AMS HTTP and HTTPS dependencies, and develops and refines these dependencies on an ongoing basis. See egressMgmt.zip. Along with the JSON file, the ZIP contains a README.

Note

- This information isn't comprehensive--some required external sites aren't listed here.
- Do not use this list under a deny list or blocking strategy.

- This list is meant as a starting point for an egress filtering rule set, with the expectation that reporting tools will be used to determine precisely where the actual traffic diverges from the list.

To ask for information about filtering egress traffic, email your CSDM: ams-csdm@amazon.com.

Security groups

In AWS VPCs, AWS Security Groups act as virtual firewalls, controlling the traffic for one or more stacks (an instance or a set of instances). When a stack is launched, it's associated with one or more security groups, which determine what traffic is allowed to reach it:

- For stacks in your public subnets, the default security groups accept traffic from HTTP (80) and HTTPS (443) from all locations (the internet). The stacks also accept internal SSH and RDP traffic from your corporate network, and AWS bastions. Those stacks can then egress through any port to the Internet. They can also egress to your private subnets and other stacks in your public subnet.
- Stacks in your private subnets can egress to any other stack in your private subnet, and instances within a stack can fully communicate over any protocol with each other.

Important

The default security group for stacks on private subnets allows all stacks in your private subnet to communicate with other stacks in that private subnet. If you want to restrict communications between stacks within a private subnet, you must create new security groups that describe the restriction. For example, if you want to restrict communications to a database server so that the stacks in that private subnet can only communicate from a specific application server over a specific port, request a special security group. How to do so is described in this section.

Default Security Groups

MALZ

The following table describes the default inbound security group (SG) settings for your stacks. The SG is named "SentinelDefaultSecurityGroupPrivateOnly-vpc-ID" where *ID* is a VPC ID in your AMS multi-account landing zone account. All traffic is allowed outbound to "mc-initial-garden-SentinelDefaultSecurityGroupPrivateOnly" via this security group (all local traffic within stack subnets is allowed).

All traffic is allowed outbound to 0.0.0.0/0 by a second security group "SentinelDefaultSecurityGroupPrivateOnly".

> **Tip**
>
> If you're choosing a security group for an AMS change type, such as EC2 create, or OpenSearch create domain, you would use one of the default security groups described here, or a security group that you created. You can find the list of security groups, per VPC, in either the AWS EC2 console or VPC console.

There are additional default security groups that are used for internal AMS purposes.

AMS default security groups (inbound traffic)

Type	Protocol	Port range	Source
All traffic	All	All	SentinelDefaultSecurityGroupPrivateOnly (restricts outbound traffic to members of the same security group)
All traffic	All	All	SentinelDefaultSecurityGroupPrivateOnlyEgress All (does not restrict outbound traffic)
HTTP, HTTPS, SSH, RDP	TCP	80 / 443 (Source 0.0.0.0/0) SSH and RDP access is allowed from bastions	SentinelDefaultSecurityGroupPublic (does not restrict outbound traffic)

Type	Protocol	Port range	Source
MALZ bastions:			
SSH	TCP	22	SharedServices VPC CIDR and DMZ VPC CIDR, plus Customer-provided on-prem CIDRs
SSH	TCP	22	
RDP	TCP	3389	
RDP	TCP	3389	
SALZ bastions:			
SSH	TCP	22	mc-initial-garden-LinuxBastionSG
SSH	TCP	22	mc-initial-garden-LinuxBastionDMZSG
RDP	TCP	3389	mc-initial-garden-WindowsBastionSG
RDP	TCP	3389	mc-initial-garden-WindowsBastionDMZSG

SALZ

The following table describes the default inbound security group (SG) settings for your stacks. The SG is named "mc-initial-garden-SentinelDefaultSecurityGroupPrivateOnly-*ID*" where *ID* is a unique identifier. All traffic is allowed outbound to "mc-initial-garden-SentinelDefaultSecurityGroupPrivateOnly" via this security group (all local traffic within stack subnets is allowed).

All traffic is allowed outbound to 0.0.0.0/0 by a second security group "mc-initial-garden-SentinelDefaultSecurityGroupPrivateOnlyEgressAll-*ID*".

> **Tip**
>
> If you're choosing a security group for an AMS change type, such as EC2 create, or OpenSearch create domain, you would use one of the default security groups described here, or a security group that you created. You can find the list of security groups, per VPC, in either the AWS EC2 console or VPC console.

There are additional default security groups that are used for internal AMS purposes.

AMS default security groups (inbound traffic)

Type	Protocol	Port range	Source
All traffic	All	All	SentinelDefaultSecurityGroupPrivateOnly (restricts outbound traffic to members of the same security group)
All traffic	All	All	SentinelDefaultSecurityGroupPrivateOnlyEgress All (does not restrict outbound traffic)
HTTP, HTTPS, SSH, RDP	TCP	80 / 443 (Source 0.0.0.0/0) SSH and RDP access is allowed from bastions	SentinelDefaultSecurityGroupPublic (does not restrict outbound traffic)
MALZ bastions:			
SSH	TCP	22	SharedServices VPC CIDR and DMZ VPC CIDR, plus Customer-provided on-prem CIDRs
SSH	TCP	22	
RDP	TCP	3389	
RDP	TCP	3389	
SALZ bastions:			
SSH	TCP	22	mc-initial-garden-LinuxBastionSG
SSH	TCP	22	mc-initial-garden-LinuxBastionDMZSG
RDP	TCP	3389	mc-initial-garden-WindowsBastionSG
RDP	TCP	3389	mc-initial-garden-WindowsBastionDMZSG

Create, Change, or Delete Security Groups

You can request custom security groups. In cases where the default security groups do not meet the needs of your applications or your organization, you can modify or create new security groups. Such a request would be considered approval-required and would be reviewed by the AMS operations team.

To create a security group outside of stacks and VPCs, submit an RFC using the `Deployment | Advanced stack components | Security group | Create (managed automation)` change type (ct-1oxx2g2d7hc90).

For Active Directory (AD) security group modifications, use the following change types:

- To add a user: Submit an RFC using Management | Directory Service | Users and groups | Add user to group [ct-24pi85mjtza8k]
- To remove a user: Submit an RFC using Management | Directory Service | Users and groups | Remove user from group [ct-2019s9y3nfml4]

> **Note**
>
> When using manual CTs, AMS recommends that you use the ASAP **Scheduling** option (choose **ASAP** in the console, leave start and end time blank in the API/CLI) as these CTs require an AMS operator to examine the RFC, and possibly communicate with you before it can be approved and run. If you schedule these RFCs, be sure to allow at least 24 hours. If approval does not happen before the scheduled start time, the RFC is rejected automatically.

Find Security Groups

To find the security groups attached to a stack or instance, use the EC2 console. After finding the stack or instance, you can see all security groups attached to it.

For ways to find security groups at the command line and filter the output, see `describe-security-groups`.

Appendix: Application onboarding questionnaire

Use this questionnaire to describe your deployment elements and structure so AMS can determine what infrastructure components are needed. The onboarding requirements for Line-of-Business (LoB) applications are significantly different than product applications, so this questionnaire is designed to address both.

Topics

- Deployment summary
- Infrastructure deployment components
- Application hosting platform
- Application deployment model
- Application dependencies
- SSL certificates for product applications

Deployment summary

A description of the deployment. For example:

- This account is for a Line-of-Business (LoB) application deployment (as opposed to a product application deployment).
- The deployment involves an auto-scaled ARP (authenticated reverse proxy) within the account's public/DMZ subnet.
- Web and application servers will be deployed within the account's private subnet.
- An Amazon RDS (Amazon Relational Database Service) instance will also be deployed within the account's private subnet.
- The servers (ARP, web, application, database, load balancer, and so on) are separated into distinct security groups.
- The account requires an HA (high availability) design spread across Availability Zones (AZs), that is, *Multi-AZ*.

Infrastructure deployment components

What are all the different components that will need configuring to support your application?

- Region: What AWS Region or Regions are needed?
- High Availability (HA): What Availability Zones will be used?
- Virtual Private Cloud (VPC): What is the CIDR block for the VPC?
- What server instances are needed?
  - Authenticated Reverse Proxy (ARP): OS, AMI, instance type, subnet ID, security group, ingress port?
  - Application Deployment Tool server: OS, AMI, instance type, subnet ID, security group, ingress port (Chef, Puppet) or egress port (Ansible, Saltstack) port?
  - Amazon RDS with MySQL: DB version, Usage Type, instance class, subnet ID, security group, DB instance ID, storage size, Multi-AZ, Auth type, encryption?
  - Storage: Is your app stateless? Do you require S3 buckets? Do you require persistent storage? Do you require data at rest encryption on your EBS volumes? Do you require DB encryption?
  - External (to the Managed Services VPC) server endpoints: SMTP? LDAP?
  - Network requirements: Network filtering (based on security groups?)? Web traffic inspection (inbound?outbound?)?
- Tagging: What tags should be used to group resources into logical collections? For example, all resources for an application stack. Select tags for your use case; for example, `backup=true` to enable backups. Additionally, you must use the tag `name=value` in order for any EC2 instances you create to display a name in the console.
- Security groups:
  - What security groups are needed?
  - Security group ingress rules?
  - Security group egress rules?

Application hosting platform

For your application hosting platform, consider the following possible requirements:

- Databases encrypted?
- Encryption keys managed by whom?
- All data in-transit and at-rest encrypted?
- All user access to the system via HTTPS?
- All system-to-system interactions approved by your security operations team?

Application deployment model

Considerations of how you plan your application deployments. See What is my operating model?

- Automated or manual? No deployment automation means no Auto Scale. If you request access and log in and manually update your application, and your update fails. AMS would expect you to rollback your update or alert us through a service request so we can assist you.
- If automated, what is the framework? Scripts? Agent-based (puppet/chef)? Agentless (SALT/Ansible)? CodeDeploy? Agent-based and agentless deployment tooling require a separate instance be created and deployed as the master server for the tooling. AMS expects you to be aware of all of the elements necessary for successful application deployment tooling; however, we are happy to help with related infrastructure questions.
- Do your Line-of-Business applications (those applications that you use to create and manage your applications) require patching?

Application dependencies

Do you need instances for Line-of-Business (LoB) applications? For product applications?

What do your Product applications need to function properly?

- Network level dependencies: For example, Direct Connect
- Package dependencies: For example, `pip`
- Applications that this application depends on: For example, MySql
- Firewall dependencies?

What do your LoB applications need to function properly?

- Network level dependencies: For example, Direct Connect
- Package dependencies: For example, Firefox Saucy
- Applications that this application depends on: For example, MySql
- Firewall dependencies?

SSL certificates for product applications

What SSL certificates will your servers need so your applications (LoB and product) can reach everything they need to run and be accessible?

- Auto Scaling Group?
- Database (Amazon RDS)?
- Load Balancer?
- Deployment tool server?
- Web application firewall (AWS WAF)?
- Other instances?

As an example, for each of the instances listed above you might need the following certificates:

WAF (cert 1) - > ELB-Ext (cert 2) - > ARP (cert 3) - > ELB-Int (cert 4) -> Website (cert 5) - > ELB-Int (cert 6) -> Web service (cert 7).

Document history

The following table describes the documentation for this release of AMS.

- **API version:** 2019-05-21
- **Latest documentation update:** February 16, 2023

Change	Description	Link
TOC link removed	TOC AWS Glossary link removed.	August 08, 2025
Updated content: Migrating Workloads: Windows pre-ingestion validation	Updated section to include detailed steps for using the pre-WIGs validater script to validate that your Windows instance is ready for ingestion into your AMS account;.	Migrating workloads : Windows pre-ingestion validation
Updated content, DMS configuration	an important note about the required role, dms-vpc-role.	1: AWS DMS replicati on subnet group: Create
Updated content, CFN Ingest supported resources	Added OpenSearch.	Supported Resources
Updated content, Migrating workloads	Updated instructions for pre-ingestion validation.	Migrating workloads : Windows pre-ingestion validation
Updated content, CFN Ingest.	Removed restricted "supported resources" from CFN ingest content.	CloudForm ation Ingest Stack:

Change	Description	Link
		Supported resources
Updated supported Windows versions	Added support for Windows Server 2022.	AMS Amazon Machine Images (AMIs), Migrating Workloads: Prerequisites for Linux and Windows, and Migrating workloads : Windows pre-ingestion validation
Updated content, Resource Scheduler.	Updated instructions to use the dedicated deployment CT, ct-0ywnhc8e5k9z5, applicable to both SALZ and MALZ.	AMS Resource Scheduler quick start
Updated content, Workload Ingest.	Updated supported SUSE Linux versions.	Migrating Workloads: Prerequisites for Linux and Windows
Updated content, Database Migration Service.	Added to prerequisites and made several changes for usefulness and usability.	AWS Database Migration Service (AWS DMS)

Change	Description	Link
Updated content, Workload Ingest.	The Linux Pre-WIGS Validation Zip has been updated.	Migrating Workloads: Prerequisites for Linux and Windows
Updated content.	Updated the pre-WIGS validation zip for Linux. Also, added Windows Server 2008 R2 as a supported operating system.	Migrating Workloads: Prerequisites for Linux and Windows
New content	Quick Starts and Tutorials have been moved here from the retired *AMS Advanced Change Management Guide*.	Quick starts, Tutorials.
Updated content	Deployment | Advanced stack components | Database Migration Service (DMS) | Start replication task (ct-1yq7hhqse71yg) Updated to indicate the **DocumentName** and **Region are required parameters**; previously, they were erroneously listed as optional.	Database Migration Service (DMS) | Start Replication Task
Updated content	CloudFormation Ingest Updated to indicate two new supported resources, AWS::Route53Resolver::ResolverRuleAssociation and AWS::Route53Resolver::ResolverRule.	Supported Resources

Change	Description	Link
Updated content	Migrating workloads: Windows pre-ingestion validation	Sysprep information updated with more specifics. Migrating workloads: Windows pre-ingestion validation
Updated content	Management | Custom stack | Stack from CloudFormation Template | Approve Changeset and Update (ct-1404e21baa2ox) The CT walkthrough description for the **ChangeSetName** parameter has been updated with additional information.	Stack from CloudFormation Template | Approve Changeset and Update
	Ubuntu 18.04 and Oracle Linux 8.3 available	Migrating Workloads: Prerequisites for Linux and Windows
New content:	IAM deployments through CFN Ingest and Stack Update CTs.	February 10, 2022
Database Migration Service (DMS) replication tasks	Change types updated so regular expressions permit task ARNs that contain hyphens. Start AWS DMS replication task and Database Migration Service (DMS) | Stop Replication Task.	January 13, 2022

Change	Description	Link
Linux WIGS pre-ingestion validation	The zip file was updated. Migrating workloads: Linux pre-ingestion validation.	January 13, 2022
Fixed links	The Database (DB) Import to AMS SQL RDS -> Setting up section had some bad links.	January 13, 2022